Dear Reviewers,

Thank you for your very thoughtful review of our paper. We provide our responses (Plain text with black and blue colors) to all comments (*italic text*) below. We hope that the revision addresses your concerns.

- Response to Reviewer Comments -

Reviewer #1

-Specific Comments:

1. *Most importantly, the authors are still only giving vague directions as to the depths at which particle export needs to be measured. These measurements, however, are absolutely crucial if we are to judge the effectiveness of iron fertilisation as a means of carbon sequestration, and there has been substantial debate in the particle flux literature precisely about this point. Unfortunately, the authors only talk vagues of "intermediate and deep waters" (e.g. Page 4 Line 1, P 26 L 28, and P 27 L 6; clear directions on depths are also lacking in Section 3.1). Measurement depths for particle flux absolutely need to be spelled out explicitly and as much as possible standardised in future experiments so that meaningful comparisons can be made. In the abstract, and on P 29 L 18, the authors indicate that in KIFES, they would want to place one sediment trap "within the mixed layer and another below it". This is absolutely not appropriate: sediment traps are known to perform poorly within the mixed layer, so the shallowest depth for a trap should be just below the mixed layer, so that mixed layer export can be measured. The second critical depth for a sediment trap is the depth of deepest winter-time convective mixing, which can be estimated from Argo float data for a given study area. In LOHAFEX, that was how the depth of the deep sediment traps at around 400 m was chosen. My recommendation would be that the authors make clear recommendations that particle flux must be measured just below the mixed layer (i.e. 10–20 m below) and at the depth of the winter mixed layer. I am open to alternative suggestions from the authors, but whatever they intend to do absolutely must be spelled out clearly, and the importance of these depths should be explained properly in the manuscript. As it is described at present, I would have real concerns as to whether KIFES would actually collect the correct measurements. It is critical that this manuscript makes appropriate, and explicit, recommendations in this regard.*

- Thank you for pointing out this deficiency. We have modified **'intermediate and deep waters'** to **'below the winter mixed layer'**. We have added sentences explaining '*specific depth for particle flux measurement', 'the importance of these depths'*, and defining '*effectiveness of aOIF*'.

➔ Abstract (lines 21–23, page 1):

"However, except in the Southern Ocean European Iron Fertilization Experiment, **the effectiveness of aOIF (i.e., the amount of iron-induced carbon export flux below the winter mixed layer depth)** has been unexpectedly low compared to that achieved by natural phytoplankton blooms."

➔ Abstract (lines 33–36, page 1):

"(4) Employment of neutrally buoyant sediment traps and application of the water-column derived ^{234}Thorium method at two depths **(i.e., just below the *in situ* mixed layer depth and at the winter mixed layer depth)**, with autonomous profilers equipped with an underwater video profiler and a transmissometer."

➔ 1 Introduction (lines 1–4, page 4):

"However, for aOIF to be considered as a useful geoengineering approach (IPCC, 2007), in the long run, the most critical issue is the **'effectiveness of aOIF'**. That is, whether a significant portion of the organic carbon produced by aOIF in the surface waters **is exported below the winter mixed layer depth (MLD)** to intermediate/deep layers for long-term (~1,000 years) storage (Fig. 3c) (Lampitt et al., 2008)."

➔ 2.1.2 Southern Ocean (lines 2–4, page 6):

"These early aOIF experiments resulted in clear increases in phytoplankton biomass and PP, but the impact on export production (i.e., carbon export from the surface waters **to below the winter MLD**) was not evident (Fig. 3c) (de Baar et al., 2005; Boyd et al., 2007)."

➔ 2.4.2 Southern Ocean (lines 2–3, page 13):

"However, it was unclear whether surface-fixed carbon was well and truly delivered **below the winter MLD**."

➔ 2.5 Summary of the significant results from aOIF experiments (lines 27–30, page 15):

"It should also be noted that the rates of bacterial remineralization and grazing pressure on the diatoms were in the same range inside the fertilized patch as outside, which might have assisted the delivery of iron-induced POC **from the ML to deep layers** (Smetacek et al., 2012). These results suggest that to detect **significant carbon exported below the winter MLD** following an increase in PP, at least three conditions are necessary:"

➔ 3 Present: Unanswered aOIF questions (line 39, page 15 – line 1, page 16):

"However, the impact on the net transfer of CO_2 from the atmosphere to **below the winter MLD** through the 'biological pump' (Fig. 3c) is not yet fully understood or quantified and appears to vary with environmental conditions, export flux measurement techniques, and other unknown factors (Smetacek et al., 2012)."

➔ 3.1 Export flux measurement methods (lines 35–37, page 16):

"The application of sediment traps for the determination of the carbon export flux is relatively more biased in the **ML** where ocean currents are generally faster and zooplankton are much more active than deep water. These issues suggest that sediment traps alone may not accurately determine carbon export fluxes within the **ML**."

➔ 3.1 Export flux measurement methods (lines 22–24, page 17):

"LOHAFEX has been the only aOIF experiment so far that has measured particle export using PELAGRA (Particle Export measurement using a LAGRAngian trap) sediment traps based on the NBST system deployed **at two depths of 200 m and 450 m (below the winter MLD)** (Martin et al., 2013)."

➔ 3.1 Export flux measurement methods (lines 11–12, page 18):

"NBST systems (e.g., the PELAGRA sediment trap) should be deployed **at two depths (i.e., below both the *in situ* MLD and the winter MLD)** to quantify the aOIF-induced POC flux."

➔ 4 Future: Designing future aOIF experiments (lines 28–31, page 23):

"Eddy centers tend to be subject to relatively slow current speeds, with low shear and high vertical coherence, providing ideal conditions for tracing the same water from the surface **to below the winter MLD**, while simultaneously minimizing lateral stirring and advection (Smetacek et al, 2012)."

➔ 4 Future: Designing future aOIF experiments (lines 25–27, page 24):

"Based on previous aOIF experiments, it would, therefore, be important to detect the full phase of a phytoplankton bloom to determine accurately the amount of iron-induced POC exported **out of the winter ML**."

➔ 4 Future: Designing future aOIF experiments (lines 38–41, page 25):

"Direct measurements of carbon export fluxes to determine the effectiveness of aOIF should be conducted by deploying an NBST at two depths: **(1) just below the *in situ* MLD** to detect increases in iron-induced POC in the surface layer along with the calibration of the water-column based ^{234}Th method, and **(2) at the winter MLD to detect iron-induced carbon export fluxes below winter MLD**."

➔ 4 Future: Designing future aOIF experiments (lines 30–33, page 26):

"(4) NBST system and water-column derived ^{234}Th method are employed at two depths **(i.e., just below the *in situ* MLD and at the winter MLD)**, with autonomous profilers equipped with an UVP and a transmissometer to estimate accurately the carbon export flux."

➔ 5.1 Background - Bransfield Basin (lines 8–9, page 27):

"(2) To evaluate the effectiveness of scientific aOIF in terms of atmospheric carbon sequestration (i.e., to identify/quantify significant increases in iron-induced carbon export fluxes **below the winter MLD**) in the SO."

➔ 5.2.4 Year four plan (lines 18–21, page 29):

"(5) Measure iron-induced carbon export fluxes for the regions both inside and outside the center of an eddy structure using NBST systems at two depths **(i.e., just below the *in situ* MLD and at the winter MLD)** along with the calibration of water-column based ^{234}Th measurements and autonomous profilers equipped with a transmissometer and an UVP."

2. *The authors in several places talk about "effectiveness" of aOIF, but I don't remember that being properly defined in the manuscript. As above, I think this does need to be defined, and in my view an appropriate definition would be the amount of additional carbon exported below the winter mixed layer depth as a result of iron addition. The importance of other metrics, such as the amount of carbon sequestered relative to the amount of iron added, might also be mentioned in this context.*

- We added the definition about '*effectiveness of aOIF*'. Please find the Abstract (lines 22–23, page 1) and 1 Introduction (lines 1–4, page 4).

3. *In the abstract, Line 27, the authors might want to briefly spell out what these questions are. The abstract can probably be shortened by editing the language carefully throughout. I would also recommend that the depths at which carbon sequestration should be monitored are explicitly spelled out in the abstract (and, I reiterate, these depths are not inside the mixed layer and [somewhere] below the mixed layer).*

- We have briefly spelled out *'what these questions are'*, shortened the *'abstract'*.

➔ Abstract (lines 15–40, page 1):

"Since the start of the industrial revolution, human activities have caused a rapid increase in atmospheric CO_2 concentrations, which have, in turn, had an impact on climate leading to global warming and ocean acidification. Various approaches have been proposed to reduce atmospheric CO_2. The 'Martin (or Iron) Hypothesis' suggests that ocean iron fertilization (OIF) could be an effective method for stimulating oceanic carbon sequestration through the biological pump in iron-limited, high-nutrient, low-chlorophyll **(HNLC)** regions. To test the Martin hypothesis, 13 artificial OIF (aOIF) experiments have been performed since 1990 in **HNLC regions**. These aOIF field experiments have demonstrated that primary production can be significantly enhanced by the artificial addition of iron. However, **except in the Southern Ocean European Iron Fertilization Experiment, the effectiveness of aOIF (i.e., the amount of iron-induced carbon export flux below the winter mixed layer depth) has been** unexpectedly low compared to that achieved by natural phytoplankton blooms. These results, including possible side effects have been debated amongst those who support and oppose aOIF experimentation, and many questions **such as effectiveness of scientific aOIF, environmental side effects, and international aOIF law frameworks** remain. In the context of increasing global and political concerns associated with climate change, it is valuable to examine the validity and usefulness of the aOIF experiments. To maximize the effectiveness of aOIF experiments under international aOIF regulations in the future, we suggest a design that incorporates several **components**. (1) Experiments conducted in the center of an eddy structure when grazing pressure is low and silicate levels are high (e.g., in the Southern Ocean south of polar front during early summer). (2) Shipboard observations extending over a minimum of ~40 days, with multiple iron injections (at least 2 (or 3) iron infusions of ~2,000 kg with an interval of ~10–15 days to fertilize a patch of 300 km^2 and obtain a ~2 nM concentration). (3) Tracing of the iron fertilized patch using both physical (e.g., a drifting buoy) and biogeochemical (e.g., sulfur hexafluoride and photosynthetic quantum efficiency) tracers. **(4) Employment of** neutrally buoyant sediment trap**s and application of the** water-column derived ^{234}Thorium method at two depths **(i.e., just below the *in situ* mixed layer depth and at the winter mixed layer depth),** with autonomous profilers equipped with an underwater video profiler and a transmissometer. (5) Monitoring of side effects on marine/ocean ecosystems, including production of climate-relevant gases (e.g., N_2O, dimethyl sulfide, and halogenated volatile organic compounds), **decline in oxygen inventory**, and development of toxic algae blooms, **with optical sensor equipped**

autonomous moored profilers and/or autonomous benthic vehicles. Lastly, we introduce the scientific aOIF experimental design guidelines for a future Korean Iron Fertilization Experiment in the Southern Ocean."

4. *In the first paragraph of the introduction, I am quite strongly of the opinion that the authors should also state that there is an urgent need to reduce global greenhouse gas emissions.*

- We have added statement.

➔ 1 Introduction (lines 2–5, page 3):

"Since the start of the industrial revolution, human activities have caused a rapid increase in atmospheric carbon dioxide (CO_2, **a major greenhouse gas**) from ~280 ppm (pre-industrial revolution) to ~400 ppm (present day) (http://www.esrl.noaa.gov/), which has, in turn, led to global warming and ocean acidification, **indicating that there is an urgent need to reduce global greenhouse gas emissions** (IPCC, 2013) (Fig. 1)."

5. *P 3 L 12: why is "ocean fertilisation" italicised?*

- We changed to plain text.

6. *P 6 L 10: Presumably you mean "By the end of the 20th century"?*

- We apologize this confusing. Based on **Reviewer #2's editing**, we have removed this sentence.

7. *P 10 L 26: Correct spelling of the name is "Behrenfeld"*

- We corrected it.

8. *P 16 L35: What is the difference between "tracking" and "quantifying" export flux? I think one will do. Again, please do be explicit throughout the manuscript as to what depths you are thinking about.*

- We modified "through both **tracking and quantifying** export flux" to "through **quantification of** export fluxes". For '*specific depths*', please refer **Reviewer #1's Response 1.**

9. *P 18 L 12: Saying that thorium and sediment traps are "of limited use" in determining the fate of POC is not appropriate; the implication of saying "of limited use" is that these measurements are not very useful. The authors should re-phrase this to say "and, therefore, these methods should ideally be complemented with additional techniques that can measure particle stocks at high depth resolution throughout the water column".*

- Reviewer is correct. We have revised this sentence.

10. *P 18 L 17: The UVP, and also transmissometer and other optical measurements, actually do not give a particle flux as such, they show the particle concentration. There are ways to estimate fluxes from these measurements using assumptions about particle sinking rates, but in the first instance they provide information about stocks. The authors might also want to refer to the study by Briggs et al. (2011) High-resolution observations of aggregate flux during a sub-polar North Atlantic spring bloom in Deep-Sea Research 1. This paper provides a very nice example of using backscattering and chlorophyll sensors to gain high-resolution data about a particle flux event in a Lagrangian study, so a similar scenario to an iron fertilisation.*

- Thank you for pointing out this deficiency and recommending nice study. We have modified *'particle flux'* to *'stock' or 'concentration'* and have cited Briggs et al. (2011).

➔ 3.1 Export flux measurement methods (lines 34–36, page 17):

"Total vertical particle volume profiles obtained from the UVP indicated **a maximum concentration** at 75 m (~0.3 mm^3 L^{-1}), with a gradual decrease to 150 m (~0.15 mm^3 L^{-1})."

➔ 3.1 Export flux measurement methods (line 39, page 17 – line 2, page 18):

"To continuously monitor vertical changes in POC **stocks** following iron addition, EIFEX used a transmissometer, providing high vertical resolution (~24 data points per meter) and tracking of the iron-induced **stocks** down to ~3,000 m, even though, unlike UVPs, transmissometers do not allow classification of particles (Smetacek et al., 2012)."

➔ 3.1 Export flux measurement methods (lines 7–9, page 18):

"Furthermore, recent studies also reported that use of optical spike signals in particulate backscattering and fluorescence, measured from autonomous platforms such as gliders and floats, can provide high-resolution observations of POC flux (Briggs et al., 2011; Dall'Olmo and Mork, 2014)."

11. *P 20 L 10: This sentence isn't quite clear. What does the 20% refer to: a 20% increase of the total SO DMS flux? Or a 20% increase in the 2% of the SO?*

- We apologize for this confusion. We have modified this sentence.

➔ 3.2 Considering environmental side effects (lines 34–36, page 19):

"Estimates derived by the extrapolation of SOFeX-N DMS production results suggested that fertilizing ~2% of the SO **area** over the course of a week would **derive a 20% increase of the total SO DMS flux,** which would lead to a 2°C decrease in air temperature over the SO (Wingenter et al., 2007)."

12. *P 21 L 12: The statement about domoic acid levels needs a reference. In several places throughout this paragraph, the authors rely on the conclusions reached by Trick et al. 2010 – however, I don't think that this study gives a reliable guide to possible impacts of Pseudonitzschia blooms. Trick et al. chiefly conducted bottle experiments that yielded a range of several orders of magnitude in cell quotas of DA. Their conclusions were then chiefly based on extrapolating their highest measured cell quota in a bottle incubation with quite unrealistic estimates of likely surface biomass levels to estimate a possible in-water DA concentration. If the authors do wish to cite this paper, I would strongly recommend that these caveats to their conclusions should be pointed out explicitly.*

- Thank you for your suggestion. As Reivewer #1's comments, we have added *'these caveats to their conclusion'* in Section 3.2. We have also added some references.

➔ 3.2 Considering environmental side effects (lines 1–4, page 21):

"Trick et al. (2010) suggested that large-scale OIF may induce DA accumulation with developing toxic *Pseudo-nitzschia* blooms. However, large uncertainties remain as Trick et al. (2010) simply extrapolated DA concentration based on bottle incubation experiments with HNLC surface waters to the DA production expected from large-scale OIF."

13. *P 24 L1: better to say "along with sufficient levels of solar radiation" instead of using "receipt"*

- Thank you. Based on Reviewer #2's editing, we have modified this sentence as follows:

➔ 4 Future: Designing future aOIF experiments (lines 36–39, page 23):

"To the south of the SO PF, phytoplankton blooms usually occur during early summer (i.e., from late December to early January) due to an increase in the nutrient flux from subsurface waters **induced by winter mixing**, along with **the favorable light conditions provided by a shoaling of ML** (Moore and Abbott, 2002)."

14. *P 26 Line 39: MIT and WHOI are entirely separate institutions, despite their collaborative PhD programme.*

- We modified MIT-WHOI to WHOI.

Reviewer #2

-General Comments:

This third version of review article by Yoon et al. presenting a summary of results from all ocean iron fertilization experiments (OIF) carried to date and introducing plans for a new OIF experiment in the Bransfield Basin under the leadership of the Korean Polar Research Institute. Despite some improvement in the presentation of results from previous experiments, this new version falls short of addressing the issues and comments of both reviewers: the discussion on why previous experiments led to different outcomes is still superficial and lacks a robust analysis of previous results/data and methods. As a consequence, the answers to the questions of why? where/when? and how? still rest mostly on broad statements (see comments below and in the annotated manuscript) and it is not clear how the plans for KIFES are anchored and improve on the lessons learned from previous experiments. finally I believe the issue of C sequestration (which seems to be the main aim in KIFES) is also largely informed by model simulations, therefore, how additional experiments might inform ocean biogeochemical models and affect their results might be an important aspect when presenting the scientific rationale.

- Thank you very much for all your valuable comments. We have addressed all the comments as shown in the revised manuscript. Please see below for a description and/discussion of how we addressed your comments. For annotated editing, we have reflected almost your comments and edits.

-Specific Comments:

1. *p. 5, § 1: The hypothesis mentioned in Coale et al. (1996) are: 1) rapid loss of iron from the patch. 2) Insufficient light after subduction of the patch. 3) Zooplankton Grazing. 4) Limitation by other micro-nutrients or silicate.*

- We have modified *'hypothesis'* as follows:

➔ 2.1.1 Equatorial Pacific (lines 3–7, page 5):

"Four hypotheses were advanced to explain the weak responses observed: (1) the possibility of unforeseen micro-nutrient (e.g., zinc, cadmium, and manganese) or macro-nutrient (e.g., silicate) limitations, (2) the short residence time of bioavailable iron in the surface patch **due to colloidal aggregation and/or sinking of larger particles containing iron, (3) insufficient light brought about by subduction of the patch, and** (4) high grazing pressure **by zooplankton** (**Martin et al., 1994;** Cullen, 1995; **Coale et al., 1996; Gordon et al., 1998**)."

2. *p. 10: Given that the patch was subducted during IronEx 1, the response of the patch in terms of impact of aOIF on biogeochemistry, is not particularly relevant. I recommend the authors focus on the results of IronEx II. That would help shorten section 2.4.1 and keep the discussion to the point.*

● IronEx-1 was the first aOIF experiment to test Martin's hypothesis. As we mentioned specific objectives of this review in Introduction – "**to provide a thorough overview of the aOIF experiments conducted over the last 25 years**", the results of IronEx-1 should be included in this review, even though the magnitude of the biogeochemical response in IronEx-1 was not as large as expected due to the subduction of iron-fertilized patch. Therefore, we would like to keep the description on the results of IronEx-1 in Section 2.4.1.

● We have added the information on *"the patch was subducted during IronEx-1"* in Section 2.4.1 as follows:

➔ 2.4.1 Equatorial Pacific (lines 22–24, page 10):

"While the elevated IronEx-1 Fv/Fm ratios promptly disappeared, **suggesting** rapid iron loss **due to the subduction of the fertilized patch and/or adsorption onto colloidal particles** (perhaps indicative of insufficient iron supply),"

3. *p. 11-12, lines 36-38 and 1-3, respectively: I am not sure what point the authors want to make with this paragraph.*

● We apologize for this confusion. We have revised this paragraph.

➔ 2.4.2 Southern Ocean (lines 31–34, page 11):

"Satellite observations were used to investigate the changing spatial and temporal distribution of chlorophyll-a concentration in response to iron fertilization in the fertilized patches compared to the surrounding waters**; for example, SOFeX-N/-S found elevated chlorophyll-a concentrations in fertilized patches after iron addition through satellite images (Fig. 7d)** (Boyd et al., 2000; Coale et al., 2004; Westberry et al., 2013)."

4. *p. 15, Section 2.5: I would remove discussion of the FEP in the NA, since it is not relevant in this context (see also annotated manuscript).*

● We have removed *'discussion of the FeeP experiment in the NA'* in **Section 2.2.4, Section 2.4.4, and Section 2.5**.

5. *p. 15, Section 2.5, § 1 & 2: These paragraphs only provide background information that is already given in previous sections. I would remove and focus on the significant results as mentioned in the heading.*

- We have removed these paragraphs in Section 2.5.

6. *p.15, lines 35-38: The authors argue that Si is necessary for bloom formation. Looking at results from SOFEX-N in Fig. 6 and 7, it does not seem to be necessarily the case. As I have mentioned in a previous review, this might be due to the fact that the authors compared concentrations, when they should actually compare standing stocks (i.e. integrated values for the mixed layer).*

- We apologize for this confusion. SOFeX-N/SAGE/LOHAFEX were commonly conducted in the initial low silicate concentrations. However, unlike SAGE and LOHAFEX, during SOFeX-N, silicate limitation in the iron-fertilized waters was temporary relieved through lateral mixing with the surrounding waters that had relatively higher silicate concentrations (Coale et al., 2004), and it contributed to taxonomic shift toward diatom-dominated communities (from 16% to 44% of total phytoplankton community). Please refer the SOFeX-N results in Section 2.4.2 (lines 13–17, page 12). Finally, we modified this paragraph as follows:

➔ 2.5 Summary of the significant results from aOIF experiments (lines 28–38, page 14):

"This effect was particularly noticeable as diatoms became the dominant species during IronEx-2, SOIREE, EisenEx, SEEDS-1, SOFeX-S, EIFEX, and SERIES. Diatom-dominated blooms induced >4.5-fold increases in chlorophyll-a concentrations and accounted for >65% of the chlorophyll-a increase (Boyd et al., 2000; Gervais et al., 2002; Coale et al., 2004; Smetacek et al., 2012). **The shift to a diatom-dominated community appears to be related to initial availability of silicate (i.e., initial silicate was >~5 µM in all the experiments listed above).** However, as silicate concentrations decreased to <2 µM due to removal by **phytoplankton**, diatom blooms rapidly declined. SAGE and LOHAFEX had low initial levels of silicate (<2 µM). **As a consequence**, pico and nano-phytoplankton dominated **their** communities and diatom growth was limited by the lack of available silicate. **However during SOFeX-N, initial silicate limitation (< ~3 µM) in the iron-fertilized waters was temporarily relieved through lateral mixing with the surrounding waters that had relatively higher silicate concentrations (Coale et al., 2004), which contributed to a taxonomic shift toward diatom-dominated communities (from 16% to 44% of total phytoplankton community)**."

7. *p. 16, lines 34-56: the authors make no mention of model simulations. There are several studies on efficiency and potential negative impact from model studies. This should be mentioned when dealing with this topic.*

● Thank you for suggestion. We have added as follows:

➔ 3 Present: Unanswered aOIF questions (line 39, page 15 – line 16, page 16):

"However, the impact on the net transfer of CO_2 from the atmosphere to **below the winter MLD** through the 'biological pump' **(Fig. 3c)** is not yet fully understood or quantified and appears to vary with environmental conditions, export flux measurement techniques, and other unknown factors (Smetacek et al., 2012). **There have also been a wide range of the estimates of atmospheric CO_2 drawdown resulting from large-scale and long-term aOIF based on model simulations (Joos et al., 1991; Peng and Broecker, 1991; Sarmiento and Orr, 1991; Kurz and Maier-Reimer, 1993; Gnanadesikan et al., 2003; Aumont and Bopp, 2006; Denman, 2008; Jin et al., 2008; Zahariev et al., 2008; Strong et al., 2009; Sarmiento et al., 2010).** While it is generally agreed that OIF effectiveness needs to be determined through **quantification of export fluxes,** there has been no discussion about which export flux measurement techniques are the most effective. **Meanwhile,** concern has been expressed regarding possible environmental side effects in response to iron addition (Fuhrman and Capone, 1991). These side effects include the production of greenhouse gases (e.g., N_2O and CH_4) (Lawrence, 2002; **Jin and Gruber, 2003;** Liss et al., 2005; Law, 2008; **Oschlies et al., 2010**), the development of hypoxia/anoxia in the water column (Sarmiento and Orr, 1991; **Oschlies et al., 2010; Keller et al., 2014**), and toxic algal blooms (e.g., *Pseudo-nitzschia*) (Silver et al., 2010; Trick et al., 2010). **These unwanted side effects** could lead to negative climate and ecosystem changes (Fuhrman and Capone, 1991; **Sarmiento and Orr, 1991; Jin and Gruber, 2003; Schiermeier, 2003; Oschlies et al., 2010). Model studies suggested that the unintended ecological and biogeochemical consequences in response to large-scale aOIF might cancel out the effectiveness of aOIF. For example, aOIF enhanced N_2O production may have offset (up to ~40%) the benefits of CO_2 sequestration in the EP (Sarmiento and Orr, 1991; Jin and Gruber, 2003; Oschlies et al., 2010; Hauck et al., 2016).**"

● For more details on model studies on efficiency and potential negative impact, please refer CH_4 (lines 35–37, page 18), N_2O (lines 8–12, page 19), DMS (lines 38–39, page 19), and Oxygen (lines 18–23, page 20) part in 3.2 Section and Section 4 (lines 25–34, page 22).

8. *Figure 6, panel b: Given that the size of the initial fertilized patches varied between experiments, it would be more informative to have the target iron concentrations in seawater rather than the total amount used.*

● Thank you. We have changed Figure 6b from *'total amount used'* to *'target iron concentrations'*.

➔ Figure captions (line 28, page 55):

"(b) **First target iron concentratins (nM).**"

9. *Section 3.1: I am entirely sure what the aim of this paragraph, broad presentations of methods used, or a discussion on the result (export fluxes) from previous experiments? While both issues might be relevant the authors do not really tackle the issues: why export fluxes varied so much in all experiments? Where the methods used appropriate?*

● The results of export flux varied with the environmental condition (e.g., silicate concentrations, grazing pressure rates within the mixed layer, and bacterial respiration), experimental duration, and export flux measurement techniques. Based on Reviewer #1's comments in the second revision (**Please refer Response 7 & 8 in author's response version 2**), we had added the discussion about the effectiveness of OIF *'why export fluxes varied so much in all experiments'* in Section 2.5 (line 26, page 14 – line 32, page 15) and Section 3.1 (line 8, page 17 – line 9, page 18).

● For '*Where the methods used appropriate*', we had also showed the limitations in each method (e.g., discrepancy between the ^{234}Th and sediment traps which was caused by the under- or over-sampling of POC into the drifting traps during SOIREE and SEEDS-1 and limited ability to fully scan the vertical profile of POC fluxes in both sediment traps and ^{234}Th methods during LOHAFEX) and methods used additionally to resolve these limitations (e.g., the deployment of neutrally buoyant sediment trap which could reduce the bias by sediment traps during LOHAFEX, the employment of optical sensors such as underwater video profile or transmissometers during LOHAFEX and EIFEX to monitor vertical changes in sinking particles with high resolution, and deployment of autonomous carbon explorers up to 18 months after initial deployment during SOFeX-N to continuously monitoring iron-induced POC fluxes after aOIF) in Section 3.1 (line 8, page 17 – line 9, page 18). Based on these methods, we concluded that the combination of multiple approaches is essential to accurately observe the POC produced in response to iron addition and its fate (Please refer the last paragraph of Section 3.1: lines 10–17, page 18 and 'What' of Section 4: line 38, page 25 – line 11, page 26). Also, we have added the mention about *'where the export flux should be detected'* based on Reviewer #1's comments. Please refer the **Reviewer #1's Response 1**.

10. *p. 17, lines 23-29: The authors seem to imply that 234Th is more reliable then sediment traps. This is not necessarily true: the 234Th method is sensitive to the type of model used (steady-state vs. non- steady state, C/234Th ratios, mixing, vertical resolution and uncertainties in measurements especially when sampling deeper layers). Further, the 234Th is not appropriate to measure deep fluxes. While deep fluxes (below the winter mixed layer down to the sediments) are mentioned in p.18, there is no real discussion of this highly relevant issue (which is also related to the monitoring of long-term effects).*

- We have added the limitations of the ^{234}Th approach.

➔ 3.1 Export flux measurement methods (lines 4–7, page 17):

"However, the water column-based ^{234}Th method is sensitive to the characterization of the POC to ^{234}Th ratio on sinking particles and/or the choice of ^{234}Th flux models (Buesseler et al., 2006). Therefore, sampling to estimate the POC to ^{234}Th ratio should be conducted below MLD to accurately detect downward carbon export flux into intermediate/deep waters."

- For discussion on *'monitoring of long-term effects'*, we had mentioned the autonomous carbon export, allowing the continuous observation of POC fluxes during and after aOIF experiment in Section 3.1 (lines 2–17, page 18) and Section 4 (lines 1–11, page 26). We have also added the long-term monitoring methods for possible side effects after aOIF experiments as follows.

➔ 4 Future: Designing future aOIF experiments (lines 21–24, page 26):

"The possible side effects after an aOIF experiment can be continuously monitored from optical sensors equipped autonomous moored profiler and/or autonomous benthic vehicle (e.g., crawler, which is capable to perform a long-term benthic oxygen measurements for ~12 months) (Dunne et al., 2002; Purser et al., 2013; Wenzhöfer et al., 2016)."

➔ 4 Future: Designing future aOIF experiments (lines 33–35, page 26):

"(5) The side effects on marine/ocean ecosystems, including **decline in oxygen contents** and the production of climate-relevant gases (e.g., N_2O, DMS, and HVOCs) and toxic DA, **are monitored using optical sensors equipped autonomous moored profiler and/or autonomous benthic vehicle.**"

➔ 5.2.4 Year four plan (lines 21–23, page 29):

"(6) Monitor possible side effects, such as **the decline in oxygen contents** and the production of climate-relevant gases and toxic DA, **using optical sensors equipped autonomous moored profiler and/or autonomous benthic vehicle.**"

11. *Section 3.2: The authors make no mention of observations from natural fertilization studies.*

● Thank you for pointing this out. We have added the information about *'the observations from natural fertilization'* as follows:

➔ 3.2 Considering environmental side effects (lines 31–33, page 18):

"The SO nOIF experiment conducted in 2011 year (i.e., Kerguelen Ocean and Plateau compared Study-2: KEOPS-2) (Table 1) showed that CH_4 concentrations were 4-fold higher in the naturally iron-fertilized patch than in the control area (Farías et al., 2015)."

➔ 3.2 Considering environmental side effects (lines 12–13, page 19):

"However, the SO nOIF experiment (i.e., KEOPS-2) suggested that nOIF acts as both a sink and a source for N_2O (Farías et al., 2015)."

➔ 3.2 Considering environmental side effects (lines 36–38, page 19):

"On the other hand, the SO nOIF experiment (KEOPS-1) conducted in 2005 year (Table 1) showed that DMS production was not markedly higher in the naturally fertilized area compared to the surrounding waters (Belviso et al., 2008)."

12. p. 20, lines 34-36: This statement is not correct. Keller et al, 2014 does find significant changes in ocean O2 under climate change scenarios.

● We apologize for the confusion. We have revised this paragraph and added the information about decline in oxygen content as follows:

➔ 3.2 Considering environmental side effects (lines 18–24, page 20):

"Early modeling studies suggest that anoxic conditions may develop after long-term, large-scale aOIF (**Fuhrman and Capone, 1991;** Sarmiento and Orr, 1991), **whereas a recent study based on more sophisticated models showed sustained** well-oxygenated conditions **(O_2 ≈ 120 μM) even under simulated aOIF south of 30°S on a 100 year timescale from 2010 to 2110 (Oschlies et al., 2010). Keller et al. (2014) found that simulated SO large-scale aOIF south of 40°S from the year 2020 to 2100 under a high CO_2 emissions scenario (Meinshausen et al., 2011) may develop suboxia (O_2 <10 μM) in the year 2125. Clearly, the circumstances under which a substantial decline in oxygen inventory can be caused by large-scale aOIF need further study."**

➔ Abstract (lines 36–39, page 1):

"(5) Monitoring of side effects on marine/ocean ecosystems, including production of climate-relevant gases (e.g., N_2O, dimethyl sulfide, and halogenated volatile organic compounds), **decline in oxygen inventory,** and development of toxic algae blooms, **with optical sensor equipped autonomous moored profilers and/or autonomous benthic vehicles."**

➔ 3.2 Considering environmental side effects (lines 9–13, page 21):

"The production of climate-relevant gases such as N_2O, DMS, and HVOCs, which is influenced by the remineralization of sinking particles that follows OIF-induced blooms, **the decline in oxygen inventory**, and the production of DA are particularly important to understand. These processes can directly and indirectly modify the effectiveness of carbon sequestration, with either positive or negative effects. Therefore, monitoring **declines in oxygen content** and production of climate-relevant gases and DA to evaluate the effectiveness of aOIF as a geoengineering approach is essential."

➔ 4 Future: Designing future aOIF experiments (lines 16–19, page 26):

"The emissions of climate-relevant gases, such as N_2O, DMS, and HVOCs, may directly contribute to warming or cooling effects, and **oxygen decrease and** toxic DA production may have a negative impact on marine/ocean ecosystems (Law, 2008; Silver et al., 2010; Trick et al., 2010; **Williamson et al., 2012**), resulting in significant offsets against the benefits of aOIF experiments."

➔ 4 Future: Designing future aOIF experiments (lines 33–35, page 26):

"(5) The side effects on marine/ocean ecosystems, including **decline in oxygen contents** and the production of climate-relevant gases (e.g., N_2O, DMS, and HVOCs) and toxic DA, are monitored using optical sensors equipped autonomous moored profiler and/or autonomous benthic vehicle."

➔ 5.2.2 Year two plan (lines 25–27, page 28):

"(1) Using the ice breaker RV *ARAON*, undertake a field investigation in/near the eastern Bransfield Basin to determine physical and biogeochemical parameters associated with both carbon sequestration and aOIF side effects (e.g., **decline in oxygen inventory** and production of N_2O, DMS, HVOCs, and DA), based on the first-year results."

➔ 6 Summary (lines 18–19, page 30):

"Likewise, the possible environmental negative side effects in response to iron addition, such as **decline in oxygen contents** and the production of climate-relevant gases and toxic DA, could not be fully evaluated due to the widely differing outcomes,"

13. p. 21, lines 17-27: I believe the topic of C sequestration is also largely influenced by model simulations, therefore, how additional experiments might inform ocean biogeochemical models might be an important aspect when presenting the scientific rationale (see for instance Losch et al., 2014, http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.jmarsys.2013.09.003).

● Thank you for your suggestion. However, this paragraph summarizes which environmental side effects should be essentially quantified to evaluate the effectiveness of aOIF as a means for reducing atmospheric CO_2 based on previous aOIF experiments, nOIF experiments, and modeling results. Improvement of the ocean biogeochemical models can be realized from future scientific additional aOIF experiment, like KIFES. Therefore, we think that adding the sentence about *'how additional experiments might inform ocean biogeochemical models might be an important aspect when presenting the scientific rationale'* to Section 5.2.5 KIFES section would be more reasonable. We added this part as follows:

➔ **5.2.5 Year five plan** (lines 33–35, page 29):

"(5) Evaluate effectiveness and environmental side effects of large-scale SO aOIF via more realistic simulations under various scenarios with ocean biogeochemical models using the integrated results of KIFES."

14. p. 23 § 2: The issue of zooplankton grazing is mentioned only in passing in the next page (§ 1 on timing of experiment), however, zooplankton composition and stocks should also guide the choice of location (for instance areas were krill or salps dominate?) and scientific rationale for KIFES.

● Good point. We have added the mention about *'the issue of zooplankton grazing'* in Section 4 as follows:

➔ 4 Future: Designing future aOIF experiments (lines 18–24, page 23):

"Previous aOIF experiments have shown that silicate concentration and mesozooplankton **stocks (i.e., copepods) are** the crucial **factors controlling** diatom **blooms (Boyd et al., 2000; Gervais et al., 2002; Coale et al., 2004; Tsuda et al., 2007; Smetacek et al., 2012).** Therefore, to obtain the greatest possible carbon export flux in response to iron addition, aOIF experiments should be designed in regions with high silicate concentrations **and low grazing pressure. It will be important to conduct initial surveys to measure the degree of grazing pressure in HNLC region with** high silicate concentrations such as in the subarctic NP (e.g., SEEDS-1 experiment) and the south of SO PF (e.g., SOFeX-S experiment) >~15 μM (Fig. 4c)."

15. *p. 24, § 2: Duration: The authors should consider the life span of eddies as well as the possibility of using autonomous observation platforms. In addition, risk assessment and monitoring as stipulated in the LC-LP.2 (2010) resolution should also be considered as a basis to determine the duration of the experiments. Further, carrying repeated fertilization might delay sinking events due to iron limitation of phytoplankton.*

● We provided the information about the life span of mesoscale eddies in 'Where' of Section 4 (lines 27-28, page 23).

● We have added the sentence about consideration about *'the possibility of using autonomous observation platforms'* in Section 4 as follows:

➔ 4 Future: Designing future aOIF experiments (lines 29–31, page 24):

"In addition, autonomous observation platforms are essential to monitor post-assessment of effectiveness, capacity, and risks of aOIF for at least 12 months after experiment termination."

● For the risk assessment and monitoring, please refer **Reviewer #2's Response 10**.

16. *p. 25, lines 14-25: The arguments for several iron infusions are not very robust given that despite a decrease in dissolved iron concentrations Fv/Fm remained high in all experiments before iron additions were repeated. Further, based on the EIFEX results, one could argue that a single iron addition to a final concentration of 1.5-2 nM might be enough to trigger both a bloom as well as lead to significant export (see also previous comment).*

● Thank you for your comments. As we had mentioned in Section 2.3.1 (lines 32–34, page 8), bottle incubation experiments showed that maximum phytoplankton growth rates in response to iron additions occurred when dissolved iron concentrations increased to the target concentrations, 1–2 nM (Fitzwater et al., 1996). However, IronEx-1, single iron addition experiment, showed that dissolved iron concentration rapidly decreased from 3.6 to 0.25 nM ~4 days after iron addition in the center of the fertilized patch due to subduction of the patch and sinking of colloidal aggregation and/or large particles containing iron, suggesting a limit to the level required for phytoplankton growth (please refer Section 2.3.1: lines 11–13, page 9). As we had mentioned in How of Section 4 (lines 10–15, page 25), SOIREE also showed that first infusion elevated the dissolved iron concentration up to 2.7 nM, and then dissolved iron concentrations was rapidly decreased to 0.2–0.3 nM in ~60 hours after first addition, requiring re-infusion (Bowie et al., 2001). During IronEx-1, Fv/Fm ratio, which indicates iron limitation on phytoplankton growth, showed that increased Fv/Fm after first iron addition continuously decreased ~4 days after first iron addition, but during IronEx-2 increased Fv/Fm after first iron addition remained throughout experiment duration following additional iron infusions (Barber and Hiscock, 2006) (please refer Section 2.4.1: lines 21–26, page 10). During SOIREE multiple additions of iron led to persistently high levels of both dissolved and particulate iron within the mixed layer, with a

rapid reduction at the end of the experiment, combined with an increase in the concentration of iron-binding ligands (Bowie et al., 2001) (please refer Section 4: lines 12–15, page 25). In both EIFEX and SOFeX-S, it was also found that multiple iron infusions allowed iron to persist in the mixed layer longer than its expected oxidation kinetics (Croot et al., 2008) (please refer Section 4: lines 15–18, page 25). Therefore, we think that the suggestion of multiple iron infusions would be more reasonable for aOIF experimentation.

17. *p. 27: I still find the argument for the location (Bransfield straight) somewhat tenuous as they could apply to other location as well. Further, the location seems to be situated in a sensitive area (CCAMLR subarea 48.1) with high krill stocks adding a whole new level of complexity in following both the evolution of the patch and impacts on higher trophic levels. I suggest the location should be re-evaluated based on considerations including food webs and hydrography (including what would be the fate of the patch and surface properties as well as exported organic matter once the eddy collapses).*

● Thank you for your suggestion. We believe that we had faithfully answered to Reviewers's comment on the location of Bransfield region with detailed explanations in **Response 13 in Author's response version 2**. Detailed background/information are found in *'specific proposal for KIFES', 'description of the logic for conducting this in the Bransfield Strait', 'what are the hypothesis', and 'how the KIFES project improve on previous experiments'*.

● For aOIF experiment in the krill habitat, Smetacek and Naqvi (2008) suggested that the krill habitat may provide a suitable site for a future SO aOIF experiment, as they have a potential (Tovar-Sanchez et al. 2007) for sustaining biological pump after the experiment and in turn recovering the whale populations, leading to positive effect on marine ecosystem. However, there has been little information about the relationship between mesoscale eddies and krill habitat in previous aOIF experiments. Therefore, we think that at present it is inappropriate dealing with the subject in this review.

-Annotated Comments in the Manuscript:

❖ **AC1: In 'caution is required because artificially high levels of SF6 injection may negatively impact the interpretation of low-level SF6 signals dissolved in seawater via air-sea exchange.',**
** SF6 has other advantages: can help provide estimates of vertical and horizontal mixing/diffusivity.*
** meaning of this sentence unclear. The main issue with SF6 is that concentrations decrease relatively rapidly (mixing and air-sea exchanged). Hence, it allows marking of the patch as a whole only once and for a limited period of time.*

● We have modified this sentence and added sentences concerning *'main issue with SF_6'* in Section 2.3.2 and Section 4 as follows:

➔ 2.3.2 Tracing iron-fertilized patch (lines 29–34, page 9):

"Although these earlier experiments demonstrated that the injection of artificial SF_6 is a useful technique for following iron-fertilized patches, **SF_6 can only be used for limited period (~2 weeks) due to the loss at the surface through air-sea gas exchange (Law et al., 2006; Tsumune et al., 2009; Martin et al., 2013). Furthermore,** caution is required because artificially high levels of SF_6 injection may negatively impact the interpretation of low-level SF_6 signals dissolved in seawater via air-sea exchange **to estimate tracer-based water mass ages for understanding physical circulation (Fine, 2011).**"

➔ 4 Future: Designing future aOIF experiments (lines 32–33, page 25):

"However, tracing via SF_6 allows for only a limited period (~2 weeks) due to air-sea gas exchange (Law et al., 2006; Tsumune et al., 2009; Martin et al., 2013)."

❖ **AC2: In '(~50%)',**
** this value must be explained.*

● We have added explanation as follows:

➔ 2.4.1 Equatorial Pacific (lines 7–9, page 11):

"The biomass of meso-zooplankton (200–2,000 μm), such as copepods, grew simultaneously, substantially increasing the **community grazing effect of larger animals on phytoplankton standing stocks from 7.8% d^{-1} outside patch to 11.4% d^{-1} in the patch** (Coale et al., 1996)."

❖ **AC3: In '2.4.2 Southern Ocean',**
** As the Southern Ocean is the most relevant here, I would shift this section to the end of section 2.4.*

● Thank you. However, based on Reviewers's comments in second revision (please refer **Response 21 in Author's response version 2**), we had organized the Section 2 and Figures 6–7 *'by region with HNLC regions'*. As we had presented the data by the regions (EP-SO-Subarctic NP) in Section 2.1 and Section 2.2, it is likely appropriate to sustain original version (EP-SO-Subarctic NP) in Section 2.4.2.

❖ **AC4: In 'results suggested that diatoms were abundant in the two experiments.',**
** How so?*

● We have revised this sentence in Section 2.4.2 as follows:

➔ 2.4.2 Southern Ocean (lines 20–22, page 12):

"**Although both initially dominated by diatoms,** SOFeX-S had a somewhat greater ΔNO_3^- (-3.5 μM) and ΔpCO_2 (-36 μatm) than EIFEX (ΔNO_3^-: -1.6 μM and ΔpCO_2: -30 μatm) (Coale et al., 2004; Hoffmann et al., 2006; Smetacek et al., 2012; Assmy et al., 2013)."

❖ **AC5: In 'This augmentation was the largest among all the aOIF experiments (Tsuda et al., 2003). The dramatic chlorophyll-a increase observed during SEEDS-1 was partly attributed to the particular range of seawater temperature in the region, which was conducive to diatom growth (i.e., 8–13°C) as well as to the shallower MLD (~10 m), which provided a relatively longer surface water residence time for the additional iron (Figs. 6c and d) (Noiri et al., 2005; Takeda and Tsuda, 2005; Tsumune et al., 2005).',**
** When comparing integrated values (over the mixed layer), other experiments reached similar high biomass. Given the broad range in mixed layer depths, comparing concentrations can give a wrong impression of the actual biomass increase.*

● We apologize for missing your comment in first revision (**Response 17 in Author's response version 1**) when we re-organized our manuscript during second revision. We have re-added mention about '*the difference between surface chlorophyll-a concentrations' and 'integrated chorophyll-a concentrations or/and primary production'* in Section 2.5, which we had revised in first revision and have added 'surface' word in the sentence.

➔ 2.4.3 Subarctic North Pacific (lines 29–31, page 13):

"The dramatic **surface** chlorophyll-a increase observed during SEEDS-1 was partly attributed to the particular range of seawater temperature in the region, which was conducive to diatom growth (i.e., 8–13°C) as well as to the shallower MLD (~10 m),"

➔ 2.5 Summary of the significant results from aOIF experiments (lines 7–14, page 15):

"**Among previous aOIF experiments,** the subarctic NP SEEDS-1 experiment, which was conducted under temperature conditions ideal for diatom growth (~8°C) and with shallow MLDs (~10 m), produced the greatest changes in **surface phytoplankton biomass. However, influence of iron addition on the phytoplankton growth covers from surface to euphotic depth as added iron is mixed within the ML by physical processes (Coale et al., 1998). Although maximum surface chlorophyll-a concentration during SEEDS-1 (~22 mg m^{-3}) was much higher than EIFEX (~3.2 mg m^{-3}), the MLD-integrated chlorophyll-a concentrations were similar to ~250 mg m^{-2} between two experiments. Therefore, to quantify the exact changes in phytoplankton biomass in response to iron addition, it would be eligible to consider the MLD-integrated PP for comparison.**"

❖ **AC6: In '2.5 Summary of the significant results from a OIF experiments',**
***** *These are not results!*

- Please refer **Reviewer #2's Response 5.**

❖ **AC7: In 'changeover to a diatom-dominated community after iron addition is needed.',**
***** *How about SOFEX-N then?*

- Please refer **Reviewer #2's Response 6**.

❖ **AC8: In 'addition were not dramatic compared to natural values.',**
***** *I am not sure I understand the argument here: natural values are not necessarily low.*

● We had referred 'Buesseler et al. (2005)' and added it.

In 'Buesseler et al. (2005)',

'Thus, the lack of a stronger inverse correlation between surface SF_6 and ^{234}Th, is evidence that during the 4-week occupation of the SOFeX bloom, surface ocean export was not particularly elevated, or at least was small relative to other observations of particle export associated with natural blooms from other regions.'.

'When converted to POC and $bSiO_2$ export rates, these fluxes were not large relative to natural blooms and were, in fact, smaller than those observed under natural conditions at this site during a different field season.'.

➔ 2.4.2 Southern Ocean (lines 39–40, page 12):

"During SOFeX-S, significantly enhanced POC fluxes below the **MLD** similar to those observed in natural blooms, were estimated from ^{234}Th measurements after iron enrichment **(Buesseler et al., 2005)**."

➔ 2.5 Summary of the significant results from aOIF experiments (lines 21–22, page 15):

"However, the changes in export flux, after iron addition, were not dramatic compared to natural values **(Buesseler et al., 2005)**."

❖ **AC9: In 'offset leading',**
***** *I would change the wording, as offset is used in the literature as counteracting the effects OIFs, This is not the case here.*

● We have modified this wording as follows:

➔ 3.2 Considering environmental side effects (lines 15–16, page 20):

"**Another important consideration is the extent to which** the effectiveness of **aOIF is cancelled out by its tendency to** lead to ocean ecosystem changes such as a decrease in dissolved oxygen and an increase in domoic acid (DA) levels."

❖ **AC10: In 'It is likely that several phytoplankton samples (e.g., Pseudo-nitzschia abundance: 1.3 × 10^6 cells L^{-1} in IronEx-2 and 7.5 × 10^4 cells L^{-1} in SOFeX-S) collected with a net tow were suitable to detect these changes.',**
***** *unclear. please explain.*

● We apologize for the confusion. Unlike the results of Trick et al. (2010) that showed no DA change during EisenEx and SERIES, Silver et al. (2010) suggested that discernable change in DA during IronEx-2 and SOFeX-S could be found from phytoplankton samples taken with net tows (20- to 30-µm mesh phytoplankton nets) by allowing larger phytoplankton samples including *Pseudo-nitzschia* to concentrate. During IronEx-2 and SOFeX-S, DA concentrations were as high as 45 ng DA l^{-1} and 220 ng DA l^{-1} in the water, respectively, i.e., toxin levels high enough to damage marine communities in coastal waters (Scholin et al., 2000; Schnetzer et al., 2007). Based on these results, we concluded that it is necessary to quantify DA production in response to iron additions, with concentrated larger phytoplankton samples taken from a net tow. To explain clearly these contents, we have modified these sentences in Section 3.2.

➔ 3.2 Considering environmental side effects (line 35, page 20 – line 1, page 21):

"It is likely that **detection was possible because these samples were collected with net tows (20- to 30-µm mesh phytoplankton nets), which provided concentrated samples of larger phytoplankton including *Pseudo-nitzschia*** (e.g., *Pseudo-nitzschia* abundance: 1.3 × 10^6 cells L^{-1} in IronEx-2 and 7.5 × 10^4 cells L^{-1} in SOFeX-S). During IronEx-2 and SOFeX-S, high cell abundances of *Pseudo-nitzschia* (10^6 and 10^5 cells l^{-1}, respectively) combined with moderate DA **cell** quotas (0.05 and 1 pg DA $cell^{-1}$, respectively) produced toxin levels as high as 45 ng DA l^{-1} and 220 ng DA l^{-1} **in the water**, respectively, i.e., toxin levels high enough to damage marine communities in coastal waters **(Scholin et al., 2000; Schnetzer et al., 2007)**."

➔ 3.2 Considering environmental side effects (lines 4–5, page 21):

"As a result, it is necessary to **clarify/**quantify DA production in response to aOIF, with concentrated **larger** phytoplankton samples **collected using** net tows **(20- to 30-µm mesh phytoplankton net)**."

❖ **AC11: In 'toxin levels high enough to damage marine communities in coastal waters.',**
* *add references.*

● Done. Please refer **Reviewer #2's AC10**.

❖ **AC12: In 'Therefore, it is necessary to quantify DA production in response to iron additions, with concentrated phytoplankton samples (i.e., large numbers of cells) using a net tow.',**
** Were does this come from? It is not the conclusion I would make from the previous. Rather handle the samples in such a way that DA remains unchanged. Also what about DA in the water?*

● Please refer **Reviewer #2's AC10**.

❖ **AC13: In 'Where: The first consideration for a successful aOIF experiment is the location. The dominance of diatoms in phytoplankton communities plays a major role in increasing the biological pump because diatom species can sink rapidly as aggregates or by forming resting spores (Tréguer et al., 1995).',**
** see also more recent literature:*
Rembauville, Mathieu, et al. "Export fluxes in a naturally iron-fertilized area of the Southern Ocean–Part 2: Importance of diatom resting spores and faecal pellets for export." Biogeosciences 12.11 (2015): 3171-3195. Rembauville, M., et al. "Strong contribution of diatom resting spores to deep-sea carbon transfer in naturally iron-fertilized waters downstream of South Georgia." Deep Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers 115 (2016): 22-35. Salter, Ian, et al. "Estimating carbon, silica and diatom export from a naturally fertilised phytoplankton bloom in the Southern Ocean using PELAGRA: A novel drifting sediment trap." Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography 54.18 (2007): 2233-2259.

● Thank you. We have added these references and added the sentence that mentions diatom resting spores.

➔ 4 Future: Designing future aOIF experiments (lines 14–18, page 23):

"The dominance of diatoms in phytoplankton communities plays a major role in increasing the biological pump because diatom species can sink rapidly as aggregates or **by forming resting spores to efficiently bypass the intense grazing pressure of mesozooplankton (e.g., copepods, salps, and krill) and export carbon out of the winter ML** (Tréguer et al., 1995; **Salter et al. 2007; Assmy et al., 2013; Rembauville et al., 2015; Rembauville et al., 2016**)."

❖ **AC14: In 'while after January (i.e., during late summer and early autumn from February to March) it is mainly limited due to silicate availability.',**
** please provide references*

● We have added references.

❖ **AC15: In '(de Baar et al., 2005;',**
** De Baar 2005 states that light is limiting*

- Thank you for pointing this out. We have modified this sentence.

➔ 4 Future: Designing future aOIF experiments (line 41, page 23 – line 3, page 24):

"In previous SO aOIF experiments conducted between spring and early autumn, PP was mainly limited by iron and/or silicate availability rather than light availability **(except when heavy clouds led to severe light limitation, only occurred for a few days during EisenEx) (Gervais et al., 2002; Bakker et al., 2005;** Smetacek and Naqvi, 2008; Peloquin et al., 2011b)."

❖ **AC16: In '(Coale et al., 2004; Martin et al., 2013),',**
** I have not found convincing evidence for grazing control of diatom growth this in the articles cited.*

- We have removed these references and added more appropriate references **(Schultes et al., 2006; Smetacek and Naqvi, 2010)**, reporting grazing control on diatom growth.

In 'Schultes et al. (2006)':

'Overall grazing impact of copepods in these studies reached 25% of phytoplankton standing stock removed per day with the major fraction being attributable to C. simillimus.'.

In 'Smetacek and Naqvi (2010)':

'The second fertilization had no noticeable effect on growth rates or biomass of phyto- or bacterioplankton. Apparently, the main reason why biomass did not build up to higher levels was due to heavy grazing of the large copepod population. Incubation experiments indicated that the copepods increased their feeding and faecal production rates inside the patch.'.

❖ **AC17: In '(Le Quéré et al., 2016).',**
***** *This is a model simulation paper. Should not be referred here.*

● We have removed this paper and added more appropriate references as follows:

Hunt, B. P. V. and Hosie, G. W.: The seasonal succession of zooplankton in the Southern Ocean south of Australia, part II: The Sub-Antarctic to Polar Frontal Zones, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. I, 53, 1203-1223, 2006.

Rembauville, M., Blain, S., Armand, L., Quéguiner, B., and Salter, I.: Export fluxes in a naturally iron-fertilized area of the Southern Ocean – Part 2: Importance of diatom resting spores and faecal pellets for export, Biogeosciences, 12, 3171-3195, https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-12-3171-2015, 2015.

❖ **AC18: In '(2) below the depth of the winter MLD to detect iron-induced export carbon fluxes into intermediate/deeper waters (Bidigare et al., 1999; Nodder et al., 2001; Boyd et al., 2004; Buesseler et al., 2004; Coale et al., 2004; Aono et al., 2005; Buesseler et al., 2005; Tsuda et al., 2007; Smetacek et al., 2012; Martin et al., 2013). Sinking-particle profiling systems mounted on autonomous floats, such as a transmissometer and UVP that measure and photograph sinking particles, could provide a record of the temporal and vertical evolution of iron-induced POC stocks through successive depth layers down to ~3,000-m depth for ~20 months after deployment, once calibrated using POC fluxes measured from sediment traps and/or a water-column based 234Th method (Bishop et al., 2004; Smetacek et al., 2012; Martin et al., 2013).',**
***** *What about deep-sea (moored) traps and benthic oxygen measurements?*

● Thank you for comments. Please refer **Reviewer #2's response 10**.

References

Assmy, P., Smetacek, V., Montresor, M., Klaas, C., Henjes, J., Strass, V. H., Arrieta, J. M., Bathmann, U., Berg, G. M., Breitbarth, E., Cisewski, B., Friedrichs, L., Fuchs, N., Herndl, G. J., Jansen, S., Krägefsky, S., Latasa, M., Peeken, I., Röttgers, R., Scharek, R., Schüller, S. E., Steigenberger, S., Webb, A., and Wolf-Gladrow, D.: Thick-shelled, grazer-protected diatoms decouple ocean carbon and silicon cycles in the iron-limited Antarctic Circumpolar Current, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA., 110, 20633-20638, 2013.

Aumont, O. and Bopp, L.: Globalizing results from ocean *in situ* iron fertilization studies, Global Biogeochem. Cycles, 20, GB2017, 2006.

Bakker, D. C. E., Bozec, Y., Nightingale, P. D., Goldson, L., Messias, M.-J., de Baar, H. J. W., Liddicoat, M., Skjelvan, I., Strass, V., and Watson, A. J.: Iron and mixing affect biological carbon uptake in SOIREE and EisenEx, two Southern Ocean iron fertilisation experiments, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. I, 52, 1001-1019, 2005.

Barber, R. T. and Hiscock, M. R.: A rising tide lifts all phytoplankton: Growth response of other phytoplankton taxa in diatom-dominated blooms, Global Biogeochem. Cycles, 20, GB4S03, 2006.

Belviso, S., Bopp, L., Mosseri, J., Tedetti, M., Garcia, N., Griffiths, B., Joux, F., Obernosterer, I., Uitz, J., and Veldhuis, M. J. W.: Effect of natural iron fertilisation on the distribution of DMS and DMSP in the Indian sector of the Southern Ocean, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 55, 893-900, 2008.

Bopp, L., Aumont, O., Belviso, S., and Blain, S.: Modelling the effect of iron fertilization on dimethylsulphide emissions in the Southern Ocean, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 55, 901-912, 2008.

Bowie, A. R., Maldonado, M. T., Frew, R. D., Croot, P. L., Achterberg, E. P., Mantoura, R. F. C., Worsfold, P. J., Law, C. S., and Boyd, P. W.: The fate of added iron during a mesoscale fertilisation experiment in the Southern Ocean, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 48, 2703-2743, 2001.

Boyd, P. W., Watson, A. J., Law, C. S., Abraham, E. R., Trull, T., Murdoch, R., Bakker, D. C. E., Bowie, A. R., Buesseler, K. O., Chang, H., Charette, M., Croot, P., Downing, K., Frew, R., Gall, M., Hadfield, M., Hall, J., Harvey, M., Jameson, G., LaRoche, J., Liddicoat, M., Ling, R., Maldonado, M. T., McKay, R. M., Nodder, S., Pickmere, S., Pridmore, R., Rintoul, S., Safi, K., Sutton, P., Strzepek, R., Tanneberger, K., Turner, S., Waite, A., and Zeldis, J.: A mesoscale phytoplankton bloom in the polar Southern Ocean stimulated by iron fertilization, Nature, 407, 695-702, 2000.

Boyd, P. W., Jickells, T., Law, C. S., Blain, S., Boyle, E. A., Buesseler, K. O., Coale, K. H., Cullen, J. J., de Baar, H. J. W., Follows, M., Harvey, M., Lancelot, C., Levasseur, M., Owens, N. P. J., Pollard, R., Rivkin, R. B., Sarmiento, J., Schoemann, V., Smetacek, V., Takeda, S., Tsuda, A., Turner, S., and Watson, A. J.: Mesoscale Iron Enrichment Experiments 1993-2005: Synthesis and Future Directions, Science, 315, 612-617, 2007.

Briggs, N., Perry, M. J., Cetinić, I., Lee, C., D'Asaro, E., Gray, A. M., and Rehm, E.: High-resolution observations of aggregate flux during a sub-polar North Atlantic spring bloom, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. I, 58, 1031-1039, 2011.

Buesseler, K. O., Andrews, J. E., Pike, S. M., Charette, M. A., Goldson, L. E., Brzezinski, M. A., Lance, V. P.: Particle export during the Southern Ocean Iron Experiment (SOFeX), Limnol. Oceanogr., 1, 311-327, 2005.

Buesseler, K. O., Benitez-Nelson, C. R., Moran, S. B., Burd, A., Charette, M., Cochran, J. K., Coppola, L., Fisher, N. S., Fowler, S. W., Gardner, W. D., Guo, L. D., Gustafsson, Ö., Lamborg, C., Masque, P., Miquel, J. C.,

Passow, U., Santschi, P. H., Savoye, N., Stewart, G., and Trull, T.: An assessment of particulate organic carbon to thorium-234 ratios in the ocean and their impact on the application of 234Th as a POC flux proxy, Mar. Chem., 100, 213-233, 2006.

Coale, K. H., Johnson, K. S., Fitzwater, S. E., Gordon, R. M., Tanner, S., Chavez, F. P., Ferioli, L., Sakamoto, C., Rogers, P., Millero, F., Steinberg, P., Nightingale, P., Cooper, D., Cochlan, W. P., Landry, M. R., Constantinou, J., Rollwagen, G., Trasvina, A., and Kudela, R.: A massive phytoplankton bloom induced by an ecosystem-scale iron fertilization experiment in the equatorial Pacific Ocean, Nature, 383, 495-501, 1996.

Coale, K. H., Johnson, K. S., Fitzwater, S. E., Blain, S. P. G., Stanton, T. P., and Coley, T. L.: IronEx-I, an *in situ* iron-enrichment experiment: Experimental design, implementation and results, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 45, 919-945, 1998.

Coale, K. H., Johnson, K. S., Chavez, F. P., Buesseler, K. O., Barber, R. T., Brzezinski, M. A., Cochlan, W. P., Millero, F. J., Falkowski, P. G., Bauer, J. E., Wanninkhof, R. H., Kudela, R. M., Altabet, M. A., Hales, B. E., Takahashi, T., Landry, M. R., Bidigare, R. R., Wang, X., Chase, Z., Strutton, P. G., Friederich, G. E., Gorbunov, M. Y., Lance, V. P., Hilting, A. K., Hiscock, M. R., Demarest, M., Hiscock, W. T., Sullivan, K. F., Tanner, S. J., Gordon, R. M., Hunter, C. N., Elrod, V. A., Fitzwater, S. E., Jones, J. L., Tozzi, S., Koblizek, M., Roberts, A. E., Herndon, J., Brewster, J., Ladizinsky, N., Smith, G., Cooper, D., Timothy, D., Brown, S. L., Selph, K. E., Sheridan, C. C., Twining, B. S., and Johnson, Z. I.: Southern Ocean Iron Enrichment Experiment: Carbon Cycling in High- and Low-Si Waters, Science, 304, 408-414, 2004.

Croot, P. L., Bluhm, K., Schlosser, C., Streu, P., Breitbarth, E., Frew, R., and Van Ardelan, M.: Regeneration of Fe(II) during EIFeX and SOFeX, Geophys. Res. Lett., 35, L19606, 2008.

Cullen, J. J.: Status of the iron hypothesis after the Open-Ocean Enrichment Experiment, Limnol. Oceanogr., 40, 1336-1343, 1995.

Dall'Olmo, G. and Mork, K. A.: Carbon export by small particles in the Norwegian Sea, Geophys. Res. Lett., 41, 2921-2927, 2014.

de Baar, H. J. W., Boyd, P. W., Coale, K. H., Landry, M. R., Tsuda, A., Assmy, P., Bakker, D. C. E., Bozec, Y., Barber, R. T., Brzezinski, M. A., Buesseler, K. O., Boyé, M., Croot, P. L., Gervais, F., Gorbunov, M. Y., Harrison, P. J., Hiscock, W. T., Laan, P., Lancelot, C., Law, C. S., Levasseur, M., Marchetti, A., Millero, F. J., Nishioka, J., Nojiri, Y., van Oijen, T., Riebesell, U., Rijkenberg, M. J. A., Saito, H., Takeda, S., Timmermans, K. R., Veldhuis, M. J. W., Waite, A. M., and Wong, C.-S.: Synthesis of iron fertilization experiments: From the Iron Age in the Age of Enlightenment, J. Geophys. Res., 110, C09S16, 2005.

Denman, K. L.: Climate change, ocean processes and ocean iron fertilization, Mar. Ecol.-Prog. Ser., 364, 219–225, 2008.

Dunne, J. P., Devol, A. H., and Emerson, S.: The Oceanic Remote Chemical/Optical Analyzer (ORCA)—An Autonomous Moored Profiler, J. Atmos. Oceanic Technol., 19, 1709-1721, 2002.

Farías, L., Florez-Leiva, L., Besoain, V., Sarthou, G., and Fernández, C.: Dissolved greenhouse gases (nitrous oxide and methane) associated with the naturally iron-fertilized Kerguelen region (KEOPS 2 cruise) in the Southern Ocean, Biogeosciences, 12, 1925-1940, https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-12-1925-2015, 2015.

Fine, R. A.: Observations of CFCs and SF6 as Ocean Tracers, Annu. Rev. Mar. Sci., 3, 173-195, 2011.

Fitzwater, S. E., Coale, K. H., Gordon, R. M., Johnson, K. S., and Ondrusek, M. E.: Iron deficiency and phytoplankton growth in the equatorial Pacific, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 43, 995-1015, 1996.

Fuhrman, J. A. and Capone, D. G.: Possible biogeochemical consequences of ocean fertilization, Limnol. Oceanogr., 36, 1951-1959, 1991.

Gervais, F., Riebesell, U., and Gorbunov, M. Y.: Changes in primary productivity and chlorophyll *a* in response to iron fertilization in the Southern Polar Frontal Zone, Limnol. Oceanogr., 47, 1324-1335, 2002.

Gnanadesikan, A., Sarmiento, J. L., and Slater, R. D.: Effects of patchy ocean fertilization on atmospheric carbon dioxide and biological production, Global Biogeochem. Cy., 17, 1050,doi:10.1029/2002GB001940, 2003.

Gordon, R. M., Johnson, K. S., and Coale, K. H.: The behaviour of iron and other trace elements during the IronEx-I and PlumEx experiments in the Equatorial Pacific, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 45, 995-1041, 1998.

Hauck, J., Köhler, P., Wolf-Gladrow, D., and Völker, C.: Iron fertilisation and century-scale effects of open ocean dissolution of olivine in a simulated CO_2 removal experiment, Environmental Research Letters, 11, 024007, 2016.

Hoffmann, L. J., Peeken, I., Lochte, K., Assmy, P., and Veldhuis, M.: Different reactions of Southern Ocean phytoplankton size classes to iron fertilization, Limnol. Oceanogr., 51, 1217-1229, 2006.

Hunt, B. P. V. and Hosie, G. W.: The seasonal succession of zooplankton in the Southern Ocean south of Australia, part II: The Sub-Antarctic to Polar Frontal Zones, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. I, 53, 1203-1223, 2006.

IPCC: Climate Change 2007: Mitigation of Climate Change, Contribution of Working Group III to the Fourth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (Eds. B. Metz, O.R. Davidson, P.R. Bosch, R. Dave, L.A. Meyer), Cambridge Univ. Press, Cambridge, 2007.

IPCC: Climate Change 2013: The Physical Science Basis, Contribution of Working Group I to the Fifth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (Eds. T. F. Stocker, D. Qin, G.-K. Plattner, M. Tignor, S. K. Allen, J. Boschung, A. Nauels, Y. Xia, V. Bex, and P. M. Midgley), Cambridge Univ. Press, Cambridge, 2013.

Jin, X. and Gruber, N.: Offsetting the radiative benefit of ocean iron fertilization by enhancing N_2O emissions, Geophys. Res. Lett., 30, 2249, 2003.

Jin, X., Gruber, N., Frenzel, H., Doney, S. C., and McWilliams, J. C.: The impact on atmospheric CO_2 of iron fertilization induced changes in the ocean's biological pump, Biogeosciences, 5, 385–406, doi:10.5194/bg-5-385-2008, 2008.

Joos, F., Sarmiento, J. L., and Siegenthaler, U.: Estimates of the effect of Southern Ocean iron fertilization on atmospheric CO_2 concentrations, Nature, 349, 772-775, 1991.

Keller, D. P., Feng, E. Y., and Oschlies, A.: Potential climate engineering effectiveness and side effects during a high carbon dioxide-emission scenario, Nat. Commun., 5, 3304, 2014.

Kurz, K. D., Maier-Reimer, E.: Iron fertilization of the austral ocean—the Hamburg model assessment, Global Biogeochem. Cycles, 7, 229–244, 1993.

Lampitt, R. S., Achterberg, E. P., Anderson, T. R., Hughes, J. A., Iglesias-Rodriguez, M. D., Kelly-Gerreyn, B.

A., Lucas, M., Popova, E. E., Sanders, R., Shepherd, J. G., Smythe-Wright, D., and Yool, A.: Ocean fertilization: a potential means of geoengineering?, Phil. Trans. R. Soc. A, 366, 3919-3945, 2008.

Law, C. S., Crawford, W. R., Smith, M. J., Boyd, P. W., Wong, C. S., Nojiri, Y., Robert, M., Abraham, E. R., Johnson, W. K., Forsland, V., and Arychuk, M.: Patch evolution and the biogeochemical impact of entrainment during an iron fertilisation experiment in the sub-Arctic Pacific, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 53, 2012-2033, 2006.

Law, C. S.: Predicting and monitoring the effects of large-scale ocean iron fertilization on marine trace gas emissions, Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser., 364, 283-288, 2008.

Lawrence, M. G.: Side Effects of Oceanic Iron Fertilization, Science, 297, 1993, 2002.

Liss, P., Chuck, A., Bakker, D., and Turner, S.: Ocean fertilization with iron: effects on climate and air quality, Tellus B, 57, 269-271, 2005.

Martin, J. H., Coale, K. H., Johnson, K. S., Fitzwater, S. E., Gordon, R. M., Tanner, S. J., Hunter, C. N., Elrod, V. A., Nowicki, J. L., Coley, T. L., Barber, R. T., Lindley, S., Watson, A. J., Van Scoy, K., Law, C. S., Liddicoat, M. I., Ling, R., Stanton, T., Stockel, J., Collins, C., Anderson, A., Bidigare, R., Ondrusek, M., Latasa, M., Millero, F. J., Lee, K., Yao, W., Zhang, J. Z., Friederich, G., Sakamoto, C., Chavez, F., Buck, K., Kolber, Z., Greene, R., Falkowski, P., Chisholm, S. W., Hoge, F., Swift, R., Yungel, J., Turner, S., Nightingale, P., Hatton, A., Liss, P., and Tindale, N. W.: Testing the iron hypothesis in ecosystems of the equatorial Pacific Ocean, Nature, 371, 123-129, 1994.

Martin, P., van der Loeff, M. R., Cassar, N., Vandromme, P., d'Ovidio, F., Stemmann, L., Rengarajan, R., Soares, M., González, H. E., Ebersbach, F., Lampitt, R. S., Sanders, R., Barnett, B. A., Smetacek, V., and Naqvi, S. W. A.: Iron fertilization enhanced net community production but not downward particle flux during the Southern Ocean iron fertilization experiment LOHAFEX, Global Biogeochem. Cycles, 27, 871-881, 2013.

Meinshausen, M., Smith, S. J., Calvin, K., Daniel, J. S., Kainuma, M. L. T., Lamarque, J.-F., Matsumoto, K., Montzka, S. A., Raper, S. C. B., Riahi, K., Thomson, A., Velders, G. J. M., and van Vuuren, D. P. P.: The RCP greenhouse gas concentrations and their extensions from 1765 to 2300, Clim. Change, 109, 213, 2011.

Moore, J. K. and Abbott, M. R.: Surface chlorophyll concentrations in relation to the Antarctic Polar Front: seasonal and spatial patterns from satellite observations, Journal of Marine Systems, 37, 69-86, 2002.

Noiri, Y., Kudo, I., Kiyosawa, H., Nishioka, J., and Tsuda, A.: Influence of iron and temperature on growth, nutrient utilization ratios and phytoplankton species composition in the western subarctic Pacific Ocean during the SEEDS experiment, Prog. Oceanogr., 64, 149-166, 2005.

Oschlies, A., Koeve, W., Rickels, W., and Rehdanz, K.: Side effects and accounting aspects of hypothetical large-scale Southern Ocean iron fertilization, Biogeosciences, 7, 4017-4035, 2010.

Peloquin, J., Hall, J., Safi, K., Ellwood, M., Law, C. S., Thompson, K., Kuparinen, J., Harvey, M., and Pickmere, S.: Control of the phytoplankton response during the SAGE experiment: A synthesis, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 58, 824-838, 2011b.

Peng, T.-H. and Broecker, W. S.: Factors limiting the reduction of atmospheric CO_2 by iron fertilization, Limnol. Oceanogr., 36, 1919-1927, 1991.

Purser, A., Thomsen, L., Barnes, C., Best, M., Chapman, R., Hofbauer, M., Menzel, M., and Wagner, H.:

Temporal and spatial benthic data collection via an internet operated Deep Sea Crawler, Methods in Oceanography, 5, 1-18, 2013.

Rembauville, M., Blain, S., Armand, L., Quéguiner, B., and Salter, I.: Export fluxes in a naturally iron-fertilized area of the Southern Ocean – Part 2: Importance of diatom resting spores and faecal pellets for export, Biogeosciences, 12, 3171-3195, https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-12-3171-2015, 2015.

Rembauville, M., Manno, C., Tarling, G. A., Blain, S., and Salter, I.: Strong contribution of diatom resting spores to deep-sea carbon transfer in naturally iron-fertilized waters downstream of South Georgia, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. I, 115, 22-35, 2016.

Salter, I., Lampitt, R. S., Sanders, R., Poulton, A., Kemp, A. E. S., Boorman, B., Saw, K., and Pearce, R.: Estimating carbon, silica and diatom export from a naturally fertilised phytoplankton bloom in the Southern Ocean using PELAGRA: A novel drifting sediment trap, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 54, 2233–2259, doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2007.06.008, 2007.

Sarmiento, J. L. and Orr, J. C.: Three-dimensional simulations of the impact of Southern Ocean nutrient depletion on atmospheric CO_2 and ocean chemistry, Limnol. Oceanogr., 36, 1928-1950, 1991.

Sarmiento, J. L., Slater, R. D., Dunne, J., Gnanadesikan, A., and Hiscock, M. R.: Efficiency of small scale carbon mitigation by patch iron fertilization, Biogeosciences, 7, 3593-3624, https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-7-3593-2010, 2010.

Schiermeier, Q.: The oresmen, Nature, 421, 109–110, 2003.

Schnetzer, A., Miller, P. E., Schaffner, R. A., Stauffer, B. A., Jones, B. H., Weisberg, S. B., DiGiacomo, P. M., Berelson, W. M., and Caron, D. A.: Blooms of Pseudo-nitzschia and domoic acid in the San Pedro Channel and Los Angeles harbor areas of the Southern California Bight, 2003–2004, Harmful Algae, 6, 372-387, 2007.

Scholin, C. A., Gulland, F., Doucette, G. J., Benson, S., Busman, M., Chavez, F. P., Cordaro, J., DeLong, R., De Vogelaere, A., Harvey, J., Haulena, M., Lefebvre, K., Lipscomb, T., Loscutoff, S., Lowenstine, L. J., Marin Iii, R., Miller, P. E., McLellan, W. A., Moeller, P. D. R., Powell, C. L., Rowles, T., Silvagni, P., Silver, M., Spraker, T., Trainer, V., and Van Dolah, F. M.: Mortality of sea lions along the central California coast linked to a toxic diatom bloom, Nature, 403, 80, 2000.

Schultes, S., Verity, P. G., and Bathmann, U.: Copepod grazing during an iron-induced diatom bloom in the Antarctic Circumpolar Current (EisenEx): I. Feeding patterns and grazing impact on prey populations, Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology, 338, 16-34, 2006.

Silver, M. W., Bargu, S., Coale, S. L., Benitez-Nelson, C. R., Garcia, A. C., Roberts, K. J., Sekula-Wood, E., Bruland, K. W., and Coale, K. H.: Toxic diatoms and domoic acid in natural and iron enriched waters of the oceanic Pacific, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA., 107, 20762-20767, 2010.

Smetacek, V. and Naqvi, S. W. A.: The next generation of iron fertilization experiments in the Southern Ocean, Philos. Trans. A Math. Phys. Eng. Sci., 366, 3947-3967, 2008.

Smetacek, V. and Naqvi, S. W. A.: The expedition of the research vessel "Polarstern" to the Antarctic in 2009 (ANT-XXV/3 - LOHAFEX), Berichte zur Polar- und Meeresforschung (Reports on Polar and Marine Research). Bremerhaven, Alfred Wegener Institute for Polar and Marine Research, 613, 2010.

Strong, A.L., Cullen, J. J., and Chisholm, S. W.: Ocean fertilization: Science, policy, and commerce, Oceanography, 22, 236–261, 2009.

Takeda, S. and Tsuda, A.: An *in situ* iron-enrichment experiment in the western subarctic Pacific (SEEDS): Introduction and summary, Prog. Oceanogr., 64, 95-109, 2005.

Tovar-Sanchez, A., Duarte, C. M., Herna´ndez-Leo´n, S., and Sanudo-Wilhelmy, S. A.: Krill as a central node for iron cycling in the Southern Ocean, Geophys. Res. Lett., 34, L11601, doi:10.1029/2006GL029096, 2007.

Trick, C. G., Bill, B. D., Cochlan, W. P., Wells, M. L., Trainer, V. L., and Pickell, L. D.: Iron enrichment stimulates toxic diatom production in high-nitrate, low-chlorophyll areas, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA., 107, 5887-5892, 2010.

Tsuda, A., Takeda, S., Saito, H., Nishioka, J., Kudo, I., Nojiri, Y., Suzuki, K., Uematsu, M., Wells, M. L., Tsumune, D., Yoshimura, T., Aono, T., Aramaki, T., Cochlan, W. P., Hayakawa, M., Imai, K., Isada, T., Iwamoto, Y., Johnson, W. K., Kameyama, S., Kato, S., Kiyosawa, H., Kondo, Y., Levasseur, M., Machida, R. J., Nagao, I., Nakagawa, F., Nakanishi, T., Nakatsuka, S., Narita, A., Noiri, Y., Obata, H., Ogawa, H., Oguma, K., Ono, T., Sakuragi, T., Sasakawa, M., Sato, M., Shimamoto, A., Takata, H., Trick, C. G., Watanabe, Y. W., Wong, C. S., and Yoshie, N.: Evidence for the grazing hypothesis: Grazing reduces phytoplankton responses of the HNLC ecosystem to iron enrichment in the western subarctic pacific (SEEDS II), J. Oceanogr., 63, 983-994, 2007.

Tsumune, D., Nishioka, J., Shimamoto, A., Takeda, S., and Tsuda, A.: Physical behavior of the SEEDS iron-fertilized patch by sulphur hexafluoride tracer release, Prog. Oceanogr., 64, 111-127, 2005.

Tsumune, D., Nishioka, J., Shimamoto, A., Watanabe, Y. W., Aramaki, T., Nojiri, Y., Takeda, S., Tsuda, A., and Tsubono, T.: Physical behaviors of the iron-fertilized patch in SEEDS II, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 56, 2948-2957, 2009.

Wenzhöfer, F., Lemburg, J., Hofbauer, M., Lehmenhecker, S. and Färber, P.: TRAMPER - An autonomous crawler for long-term benthic oxygen flux studies in remote deep sea ecosystems, OCEANS 2016 MTS/IEEE Monterey, 1-6. doi: 10.1109/OCEANS.2016.7761217, 2016.

Westberry, T. K., Behrenfeld, M. J., Milligan, A. J., and Doney, S. C.: Retrospective satellite ocean color analysis of purposeful and natural ocean iron fertilization, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. I, 73, 1-16, 2013.

Williamson, P., Wallace, D. W. R., Law, C. S., Boyd, P. W., Collos, Y., Croot, P., Denman, K., Riebesell, U., Takeda, S., and Vivian, C.: Ocean fertilization for geoengineering: A review of effectiveness, environmental impacts and emerging governance, Process Saf. Environ. Protect., 90, 475-488, 2012.

Wingenter, O. W., Elliot, S. M., and Blake, D. R.: New Directions: Enhancing the natural sulfur cycle to slow global warming, Atmos. Environ., 41, 7373-7375, 2007.

Zahariev, K., Christian, J. R., and Denman, K. L.: Preindustrial, historical, and fertilization simulations using a global ocean carbon model with new parameterizations of iron limitation, calcification, and N2 fixation, Prog. Oceanogr., 77, 56-82, 2008.

Ocean Iron Fertilization Experiments: Past–Present–Future looking to a future Korean Iron Fertilization Experiment in the Southern Ocean (KIFES) Project

Joo-Eun Yoon[1], Kyu-Cheul Yoo[2], Alison M. Macdonald[3], Ho-Il Yoon[2], Ki-Tae Park[2], Eun Jin Yang[2], Hyun-Cheol Kim[2], Jae Il Lee[2], Min Kyung Lee[2], Jinyoung Jung[2], Jisoo Park[2], Jiyoung Lee[1], Soyeon Kim[1], Kitae Kim[2*], and Il-Nam Kim[1*]

[1]Department of Marine Science, Incheon National University, Incheon 22012, Republic of Korea
[2]Korea Polar Research Institute, Incheon 21990, Republic of Korea
[3]WHOI, MS 21, 266 Woods Hold Rd., Woods Hole, MA 02543, USA

Correspondence to: Il-Nam Kim (ilnamkim@inu.ac.kr) ~~and Kitae Kim (ktkim@kopri.re.kr)~~

Abstract. Since the start of the industrial revolution, human activities have caused a rapid increase in atmospheric CO_2 concentrations, which have, in turn, had an impact on climate leading to global warming and ocean acidification. Various approaches have been proposed to reduce atmospheric CO_2 ~~concentrations~~. The 'Martin (or Iron) Hypothesis' suggests that ocean iron fertilization (OIF) could be an effective method for stimulating oceanic carbon sequestration through the biological pump in iron-limited, high-nutrient, low-chlorophyll (HNLC) regions. To test the Martin hypothesis, 13 artificial OIF (aOIF) experiments have been performed since 1990 in ~~the Southern Ocean (seven experiments), in the subarctic Pacific (three experiments), in the equatorial Pacific (two experiments), and in the subtropical Atlantic (one experiment)~~HNLC regions. These aOIF field experiments have demonstrated that primary production can be significantly enhanced by the artificial addition of iron. However, except in the Southern Ocean European Iron Fertilization Experiment, the effectiveness of aOIF ~~of export production~~ (i.e., ~~–~~the amount of iron-induced carbon export flux below the winter mixed layer depth~~the export of carbon from surface waters into intermediate/deep waters~~) ~~revealed by the aOIF experiments~~ has been ~~was~~ unexpectedly low compared to that achieved by natural phytoplankton blooms~~, except in the Southern Ocean European Iron Fertilization Experiment~~. These results, including possible side effects ~~(e.g., changes in climate relevant gas emissions and an increase in toxic phytoplankton species)~~ have been debated amongst those who support and oppose aOIF experimentation, ~~but~~ and many questions such as effectiveness of scientific aOIF, environmental side effects, and international aOIF law frameworks remain. In the context of increasing global and political concerns associated with climate change, it is valuable to examine the validity and usefulness of the aOIF experiments. To maximize the effectiveness of aOIF experiments under international aOIF regulations in the future, we suggest a design that incorporates several ~~conditions~~components. (1) Experiments ~~are~~ conducted in the center of an eddy structure when grazing pressure is low and silicate levels are high (e.g., in the ~~case of the~~ Southern Ocean ~~, at the~~ south of polar front during ~~the~~ early summer). (2) Shipboard observations ~~are made dur~~extending over a minimum of ~40 days, with multiple iron injections (at least 2 (or ~~three~~3) iron infusions of ~2,000 kg ~~at least three times,~~ with an interval of ~10–15 days~~,~~ to fertilize a patch of 300 km^2 ~~to~~ and obtain a ~2 nM concentration). (3) Tracing of the ~~The~~ iron fertilized patch ~~is traced~~ using both physical (e.g., a drifting buoy) and biogeochemical (e.g., sulfur hexafluoride and photosynthetic quantum efficiency~~the Fv/Fm ratio, where Fm is the maximum chlorophyll fluorescence yield and Fv is the difference between Fm and the minimum chlorophyll fluorescence yield~~) tracers. (4) Employment of ~~A~~ neutrally buoyant sediment traps ~~system~~ and application of the water-column derived ^{234}Thorium method ~~are employed~~ at

two depths (i.e., ~~one within is~~ just below the *in situ* mixed layer ~~(i.e., 10–20 m below)~~ depth and ~~another below it~~at ~~the depth of the depth of~~ the winter mixed layer depth~~(i.e., ~450 m)~~), with autonomous profilers equipped with an underwater video profiler and a transmissometer~~. to estimate accurately the carbon export flux.~~ (5) Monitoring of ~~The~~ side effects on marine/ocean ecosystems ~~are monitored~~, including ~~the~~ production of climate-relevant gases (e.g., N_2O, dimethyl sulfide, and halogenated volatile organic compounds), ~~the~~ decline in oxygen inventory, and ~~an increase in the abundance of toxic phytoplankton species~~the development of toxic~~n~~ algae blooms ~~(e.g., production of domoic acid)~~, with ~~are monitored using~~ optical sensor equipped autonomous moored profilers and/or autonomous benthic vehicles. ~~Finally~~Lastly, we introduce the scientific aOIF experimental design guidelines for a future Korean Iron Fertilization Experiment in the Southern Ocean.

Keywords: Ocean Iron Fertilization; High-Nutrient and Low-Chlorophyll regions; Biological Pump; Phytoplankton; Iron

1 Introduction

Since the start of the industrial revolution, human activities have caused a rapid increase in atmospheric carbon dioxide (CO_2, a~~which is~~ major greenhouse gas) from ~280 ppm (pre-industrial revolution) to ~400 ppm (present day) (http://www.esrl.noaa.gov/), which has, in turn, led to global warming and ocean acidification, indicating that there is an urgent need to reduce global greenhouse gas emissions (IPCC, 2013) (Fig. 1). As the Anthropocene climate system has rapidly become more unpredictable, the scientific consensus is that the negative outcomes are a globally urgent issue that should be resolved in a timely manner for the sake of all life on Earth (IPCC, 1990, 1992, 1995, 2001, 2007, 2013). The various ideas/approaches that have been proposed to relieve/resolve the problem of global warming (Matthews, 1996; Lenton and Vaughan, 2009; Vaughan and Lenton, 2011; IPCC, 2014; Leung et al., 2014; Ming et al., 2014) largely fall into two categories: (1) reduction of atmospheric CO_2 by the enhancement of biological CO_2 uptake (including ocean fertilization) and/or the direct capture or storage of atmospheric CO_2 through chemically engineered processes, and (2) control of solar radiation by artificial aerosol injection into the atmosphere to augment cloud formation and cloud brightening to elevate albedo (Fig. 2). One of the most attractive methods among the proposed approaches is ocean fertilization (https://web.whoi.edu/ocb-fert/), which targets the drawdown of atmospheric CO_2 by nutrient addition (e.g., iron, nitrogen, or phosphorus compounds) to stimulate phytoplankton growth and, subsequently, carbon export to the deep ocean or sediments via the ocean biological pump (ACE CRC, 2015).

The ocean biological pump is frequently depicted as a single combined process, whereby organic matter produced by phytoplankton during photosynthesis in surface waters is quickly transported to intermediate and/or deep waters (Fig. 3a) (Volk and Hoffert, 1985; De La Rocha, 2007). Although the effectiveness of the biological pump is primarily controlled by the supply of macro-nutrients (i.e., nitrate, phosphate, and silicate) from the deep ocean into the mixed layer (ML) leading to new production (Sarmiento and Gruber, 2006), iron acts as an essential micro-nutrient to stimulate the uptake of macro-nutrients for phytoplankton growth (Fig. 3b) (Martin and Fitzwater, 1988; Martin, 1990; Morel and Price, 2003). In the subarctic North Pacific (NP), equatorial Pacific (EP), and Southern Ocean (SO), which are well known as high-nutrient and low-chlorophyll (HNLC) regions (Figs. 4a and b), phytoplankton cannot completely utilize the available macro-nutrients (particularly nitrate) for photosynthesis due to a lack of iron. As a consequence, primary production (PP) in these HNLC regions is relatively low, despite the high availability of macronutrients (in particular nitrate and phosphate) (Figs. 4a and b).

Analyses of trapped air bubbles in Arctic/Antarctic ice cores have revealed that atmospheric CO_2 (~180 ppm) during the Last Glacial Maximum (LGM; ~20,000 years ago) was much lower than during pre-industrial times (~280 ppm) (Neftel et al., 1982; Barnola et al., 1987; Petit et al., 1999). Over the last 25 years, several hypotheses have been proposed to explain the lowered atmospheric CO_2 level during the LGM (Broecker, 1982; McElroy, 1983; Falkowski, 1997; Broecker and Henderson, 1998; Sigman and Boyle, 2000). Dust inputs are generally regarded as a major natural iron source for ocean fertilization, and Martin (1990) hypothesized that during the LGM increased dust inputs relieved iron-limitation and, thereby, substantially enhanced the biological pump in HNLC regions, particularly in the SO (Fig. 3b). Since Martin's hypothesis was first published, there has been an enormous interest in ocean iron fertilization (OIF) because only a small amount of iron (C:Fe ratios = 100,000:1, Anderson and Morel, 1982) is needed to stimulate a strong phytoplankton response. Therefore, much of the investigative focus has centered on the artificial addition of iron to HNLC regions as a means of enhancing carbon fixation and subsequent export via the biological pump (ACE CRC, 2008).

To test Martin's hypothesis, ~~two~~ six natural OIF (nOIF) and 13 artificial OIF (aOIF) experiments have been performed to date in the subtropical North Atlantic (NA), EP, subarctic NP, and SO (Blain et al., 2007; Boyd et al., 2007; Pollard et al., 2009; Strong et al., 2009; Smetacek et al., 2012; Martin et al., 2013; Blain et al., 2015) (Fig. 4a and Table 1). These OIF experiments demonstrated, particularly for the SO, that PP could be significantly increased after iron addition (de Baar et al.,

2005; Boyd et al., 2007). However, for aOIF to be considered as a useful geoengineering approach (IPCC, 2007), in the long run, the most critical issue is the 'effectiveness of a-OIF'. That is, whether ~~the~~a significant portion~~substantial amounts~~ of the organic carbon produced by aOIF in the surface waters is exported below the winter mixed layer depth (MLD) ~~lead to a significant export~~ to intermediate/deep layers ~~and~~for long-term (~1,000 years) storage (Fig. 3c) (Lampitt et al., 2008). A high carbon export was observed in the nOIF experiments in the SO near the Kerguelen Plateau and Crozet Islands (Blain et al., 2007; Pollard et al., 2009). However, all aOIF experiments have shown unexpectedly low carbon exports compared to natural systems (de Baar et al., 2005; Boyd et al., 2007), except for the SO European Iron Fertilization Experiment, EIFEX (Smetacek et al., 2012). The results of these experiments, as well as the potential side effects (e.g., N_2O production and development of hypoxia) (Fuhrman and Capone, 1991), have been scientifically debated amongst those who support and oppose aOIF experimentation (Chisholm et al., 2001; Johnson and Karl, 2002; Lawrence, 2002; Buesseler and Boyd, 2003; Smetacek and Naqvi, 2008; Williamson et al., 2012).

In the context of increasing global (social-political-economic) concerns associated with rapid climate change, it is necessary to examine the validity and usefulness of aOIF experimentation as a climate change mitigation strategy. Therefore, the purpose of this paper is to: (1) provide a thorough overview of the aOIF experiments conducted over the last 25 years; (2) discuss aOIF-related important unanswered questions, including carbon export measurement methods, potential side effects, and international law; (3) suggest considerations for the design of future aOIF experiments to maximize the effectiveness of the technique and begin to answer open questions; and (4) introduce design guidelines for a future Korean Iron Fertilization Experiment in the Southern Ocean (KIFES) project.

2 Past: Overview of previous aOIF experiments

A total of 13 aOIF experiments have been conducted in the following areas: 12 experiments were conducted in the three main HNLC (i.e., nitrate >~10 μM) regions: two in the EP, three in the subarctic NP, and seven in the SO (Table 1, Figs. 4a and b). One experiment was conducted in the subtropical NA, known to be a low-nutrient and low-chlorophyll (LNLC) (i.e., nitrate <1 μM) region. These aOIF experiments have been conducted with various/multiple objectives/hypotheses to investigate the biogeochemical responses of ocean environments to artificial iron additions (Table 2). This overview of past aOIF experimentation begins in Section 2.1, with a presentation of the reasons why each experiment was performed and the main hypotheses (Table 2). The unique ocean conditions for the various experiments are described in Section 2.2. Iron addition and ~~the~~ tracing methods ~~of iron~~ are described in Section 2.3. The biogeochemical responses to the aOIF experiments are presented in Section 2.4, and finally the significant findings from these experiments are summarized in Section 2.5.

2.1 Objectives/hypotheses of previous aOIF experiments

2.1.1 Equatorial Pacific

Initially, Martin's hypothesis was supported by the results of laboratory and shipboard iron-enrichment bottle experiments (Hudson and Morel, 1990; Brand, 1991; Sunda et al., 1991; DiTullio et al., 1993; Hutchins et al., 1993). However, the extrapolation of these results based on bottle incubations that exclude ~~the~~the ~~lower trophic levels in a marine ecosystem to~~ higher trophic~~community~~ levels has been strongly criticized due to possible underestimates in grazing rates~~forcing~~ and other bottle~~containment~~ effects. To deal with these issues, *in situ* iron fertilization experiments at the whole-ecosystem level are required. Under the hypothesis that ~~artificial iron addition~~aOIF would increase phytoplankton

productivity by relieving iron limitations on phytoplankton in HNLC regions, the first aOIF experiment, Iron Enrichment Experiment (IronEx-1), was conducted over 10 days in October 1993 in the EP where high light intensity ~~light~~ and ~~warm~~ temperatures would promote~~assist~~ rapid phytoplankton growth (Table 1 and Fig. 4a) (Martin et al., 1994; Coale et al., 1998).

However, the magnitude of the biogeochemical responses in IronEx-1 was not as large as expected (Martin et al., 1994). ~~Three~~ Four hypotheses were advanced to explain the weak responses observed: (1) the possibility of ~~other~~ unforeseen micro-nutrient (e.g., zinc, cadmium, and manganese) or macro-nutrient (e.g., silicate) limitations, (2) the short residence time of bioavailable iron in the surface patch due to ~~an unstable water column structure~~ colloidal aggregation and/or sinking of larger particles containing iron, (3) insufficient light brought about by subduction of the patch, and (~~3~~4) ~~the extremely~~ high grazing pressure by~~of~~ zooplankton (Martin et al., 1994; Cullen, 1995; Coale et al., 1996; Gordon et al., 1998). To test the ~~three~~ four hypotheses, a second aOIF experiment, IronEx-2, was conducted in May 1995 (Coale et al., 1996). The IronEx-2 research cruise investigated the same area for a longer period (17 days), providing more time to collect information about the biogeochemical, physiological, and ecological responses to the aOIF ~~experiment~~.

2.1.2 Southern Ocean

The SO plays an important role in intermediate and deep-water formation, and has the ~~larg~~greatest potential of any of the major ocean basins for carbon sequestration associated with artificial iron addition (Martin, 1990; Sarmiento and Orr, 1991; Cooper et al., 1996; Marshall and Speer, 2012). It is known as the largest HNLC region in the World Ocean and models simulating aOIF have predicted that among all HNLC regions, the effect of OIF on carbon sequestration is greatest in the SO (Sarmiento and Orr, 1991; Aumont and Bopp, 2006). However, a simple extrapolation of the IronEx-2 results to the SO was not deemed appropriate because of the vastly different environmental conditions (Coale et al., 1996) ~~and~~, therefore, based on the lessons from the EP experiments, several aOIF experiments were carried out in the SO~~this basin became the next region selected for an aOIF experiment~~ (Frost, 1996; Boyd et al., 2000; Smetacek, 2001; Coale et al., 2004; Harvey et al., 2010; Smetacek et al., 2012; Martin et al., 2013). To test the roles of~~With the hypothesis that~~ iron and light availability ~~may act~~ as key factors controlling~~that control~~ phytoplankton dynamics, community structure, and grazing in the SO, the Southern Ocean Iron Release Experiment (SOIREE) (Table 1 and Fig. 4a), ~~which was~~ the first *in situ* aOIF experiment performed in the SO, took place in February 1999 (13 days) in the Australasian-Pacific sector (Boyd et al., 2000).

The following year, a second aOIF experiment in the SO, EisenEx ('Eisen' means iron in German), was performed in November within an Antarctic Circumpolar Current eddy in the Atlantic sector (Smetacek, 2001). This region is considered to have a relatively high iron supply, which is supported by dust inputs and possibly icebergs~~sea ice melt~~ (de Baar et al., 1995; Quéguiner et al., 1997; Smetacek et al., 2002). EisenEx was designed to test how~~the hypothesis that~~ atmospheric dust, an important source of iron in ocean environments, might have led to a dramatic increase in ocean productivity during the LGM due to the relief of iron-limiting conditions for phytoplankton growth (Abelmann et al., 2006).

In addition to iron availability, the supply of silicate is also considered to be an important factor controlling PP in the SO. Silicate-requiring diatoms, which are large-sized phytoplankton, play~~have~~ an important role in the biological pump and are responsible for ~75% of the annual PP in the SO (Tréguer et al., 1995). The silicate concentrations in the SO show~~have~~ a decreasing northward gradient, in particular, on either side of the Antarctic Polar Front (PF), with low silicate concentrations (<5 μM) in the sub-Antarctic waters north of the PF (<61°S) and high silicate concentrations (>60 μM) to the south of the PF (Fig. 4c). Therefore, to address the impact of~~potential for~~ iron and silicate on phytoplankton communities and export~~interactions to regulate the diatom bloom~~, two aOIF experiments were conducted during January–February 2002 in two distinct regions: the Southern Ocean iron experiment-north (SOFeX-N) and -south (SOFeX-S) of the PF (Table 1) (Coale et al., 2004; Hiscock and Millero, 2005). ~~In these two experiments, it was hypothesized that conditions that provided sufficient silicate and iron would lead to high diatom production, while sufficient iron alone would not lead to a~~

~~diatom bloom (Coale et al., 2004).~~

Two years later, the Surface Ocean Lower Atmosphere Study (SOLAS) Air–Sea Gas Exchange (SAGE) experiment was conducted during March–April 2004 (15 days) in sub-Antarctic waters, which are typically HNLC with ~~are HNLC and~~ low silicate concentrations ~~waters~~ (HNLCLSi). The aim was to determine the response of phytoplankton dynamics to iron addition in ~~a~~an~~n~~ HNLCLSi region (Fig. 4c) (Law et al., 2011). SAGE was designed with the assumption that the response of phytoplankton blooms to ~~artificial iron addition~~aOIF could be detected by enhanced air-sea exchanges of climate-relevant gases (e.g., CO_2 and dimethyl sulfide (DMS)) (Harvey et al., 2010; Law et al., 2011).

These early aOIF experiments resulted in~~demonstrated~~ clear increases in phytoplankton biomass and PP, but the impact on~~association with~~ export production (i.e., ~~exported~~ carbon export from the surface waters ~~into intermediate/deep waters~~to below the winter MLD) was not evident~~obscure~~ (Fig. 3c) (de Baar et al., 2005; Boyd et al., 2007). ~~Therefore, t~~To determine if aOIF could increase export production, ~~the experiment~~ EIFEX was carried out~~conducted~~ ~~during~~ in the closed core of a cyclonic eddy ~~February–March 2004 in a cyclonic eddy core~~ near the PF during the austral summer of 2004 (Fig. 5). Because it was designed to investigate the termination of a bloom and resulting export production, EIFEX was ~~a~~ much longer ~~experiment~~ (39 days) than~~compared to~~ earlier experiments~~studies~~ (mean ± SD = 22 ± 10 days; SD represents standard deviation~~~28 days or less~~) (Smetacek et al., 2012).

Of similar duration~~To trace the fate of an iron-stimulated phytoplankton bloom and deep carbon export~~, the Indo-German iron fertilization experiment (LOHAFEX; 'Loha' is iron in Hindi) was conducted during January–March 2009 (40 days), also in a PF cyclonic eddy in HNLCLSi waters (Smetacek and Naqvi, 2010; Martin et al., 2013).

2.1.3 Subarctic North Pacific

~~By the 20th century, the subarctic NP was the only HNLC region in which an aOIF experiment had not been performed (Table 1) (de Baar et al., 2005; Boyd et al., 2007).~~ The subarctic NP shows a strong longitudinal gradient in aeolian dust deposition (i.e., high dust deposition in the west, but low in the east) (Duce and Tindale, 1991; Tsuda et al., 2003; Takeda and Tsuda, 2005), which is different from the other two HNLC regions (i.e., EP and SO). To investigate the relationship between the phytoplankton biomass/community and dust deposition, the Subarctic Pacific iron Experiment for Ecosystem Dynamics Study-1 (SEEDS-1) was conducted in July–August 2001 (13 days) in the western subarctic gyre (Tsuda et al., 2003, 2005). In 2004, the experiment was repeated (SEEDS-2) in almost the same location and season. In the intervening year, ~~2002,~~ the Subarctic Ecosystem Response to Iron Enrichment Study (SERIES) was performed in July–August 2002 (25 days) in the Gulf of Alaska (representing the eastern subarctic gyre ecosystem) to compare the response of phytoplankton in this area with that in the western subarctic (Boyd et al., 2004, 2005). The SEEDS-1/-2 experiments focused on changes in phytoplankton composition, vertical carbon flux, and climate-relevant gas production stimulated by artificial iron addition (Tsuda et al., 2005, 2007). The main objective of SEEDS-2 and SERIES was to determine the most significant factor (i.e., nutrient supply and/or grazing ~~forcing~~) controlling the iron induced phytoplankton bloom from its beginning to its end (Tsuda et al., 2003; Boyd et al., 2004).

2.1.4 Subtropical North Atlantic

Unlike HNLC regions, PP in LNLC regions, which are predominantly occupied by N_2 fixers, is generally co-limited by phosphate and iron (Mills et al., 2004)~~(Mills et al., 2004)~~. To investigate the impact of iron and phosphate co-limitation on PP, the *in situ* phosphate and iron addition experiment (FeeP) was conducted by adding both phosphate and iron in a LNLC region of the subtropical NA during April–May 2004 (21 days) (Rees et al., 2007). The location of the subtropical NA experiment corresponded to a typical LNLC region (Figs. 4a and b, Tables 3 and 4) with low nutrients (nitrate: <0.01 µM, phosphate: ~0.01 µM, and iron: <0.4 nM) and chlorophyll-a (<0.1 mg m^{-3}) conditions much lower than other experimental

sites ~~(Rees et al., 2007)~~. The FeeP experiment reported that pico-plankton (0.2–2.0 μm) abundances increased after iron and phosphate additions (Rees et al., 2007); however, no other details on the biogeochemical response to ~~iron addition~~aOIF in FeeP have been reported. This experiment will, therefore not be discussed further.

2.2 Environmental conditions prior to iron addition

The initial environment (~1–7 days before iron addition) can affect the outcome of an aOIF experiment, and the experiments described above were conducted under a wide range of physical and biogeochemical conditions. Below we consider~~We considered~~ the similarities and differences in these environments according to the physical and biogeochemical properties of the sites (~~Steinberg et al., 1998;~~ Coale et al., 1998; Steinberg et al., 1998; Bakker et al., 2001; Boyd and Law, 2001; Gervais et al., 2002; Coale et al., 2004; Boyd et al., 2005; Takeda and Tsuda, 2005; Tsuda et al., 2007; Cisewski et al., 2008; Harvey et al., 2010; Cavagna et al., 2011) (Fig. 6, Tables 3 and 4).

2.2.1 Equatorial Pacific

The first two aOIF experiments, IronEx-1 and IronEx-2, which were both conducted in the EP, were performed in different seasons (i.e., IronEx-1: October, IronEx-2: May). However, the initial surface physical conditions were ~~rather~~ similar, with warm temperatures (~~mean ± SD =~~ 24.1 ± 1.2°C~~; SD represents standard deviation~~), high surface photosynthetic available radiation values (~51.7 ± 2.1 mol m^{-2} d^{-1}), and shallow ~~mixed layer depths (~~MLDs~~)~~ (27.5 ± 2.5 m) (Figs. 6c and d) (Coale et al., 1996; Coale et al., 1998; Steinberg et al., 1998; de Baar et al., 2005).

The initial surface biogeochemical conditions were high nutrients (i.e., nitrate = 10.6 ± 0.2 μM, phosphate = 0.9 ± 0.06 μM, and silicate = 4.5 ± 0.6 μM) and low chlorophyll-a concentrations (0.2 ± 0.05 mg m^{-3}) (Tables 3 and 4). The pico-phytoplankton ~~(0.2–2.0 μm)~~ community, including *Synechococcus* and *Prochlorococcus*, was dominant (Martin et al., 1994; Coale et al., 1996; Cavender-Bares et al., 1999). Initial surface nutrient concentrations were relatively low compared with other ocean basin aOIF sites (Table 3 and Fig. 6e). Initial photosynthetic quantum efficiency (i.e., Fv/Fm ratio, where Fm is the maximum chlorophyll fluorescence yield and Fv is the difference between Fm and the minimum chlorophyll fluorescence yield) (Butler, 1978), which is widely used to determine the degree to which iron is the limiting nutrient for phytoplankton growth (the Fv/Fm ratio ranges from 0.2 to 0.65 where conditions are less iron limited as Fv/Fm approaches 0.65), was less than ~0.3 (Fig. 6g and Table 4), suggesting severe iron limitation (Behrenfeld et al., 1996; Barber and Hiscock, 2006; Aiken et al., 2008). ~~In aOIF experiments, the initial surface partial pressure of CO_2 (pCO_2) has been recorded using continuous shipboard measurement systems (Wanninkhof and Thoning, 1993; Steinberg et al., 1998; Bakker et al., 2001; Bakker et al., 2005; Hiscock and Millero, 2005; Takeda and Tsuda, 2005; Smetacek et al., 2005; Wong et al., 2006; Tsumune et al., 2009; Currie et al., 2011).~~ In the EP, initial surface partial pressure of CO_2 (pCO_2) values were 504.5 ± 33.5 μatm, which were much higher than those observed in the SO (355.6 ± 11.7 μatm) or the subarctic NP (370.0 ± 16.3 μatm) (Table 3) (Steinberg et al., 1998).

2.2.2 Southern Ocean

The initial physical conditions for the aOIF experiments in the SO (SOIREE, EisenEx, SOFeX-N/S, EIFEX, SAGE, and LOHAFEX) were very different from those found in the EP; MLDs were much deeper (57.9 ± 19.2 m) (Fig. 6c) and sea surface temperature (SST) was much lower (4.7 ± 3.4 °C) (Fig. 6d). During SOFeX-N/S, which were conducted along the same line of longitude, on either side of the PF, there were distinct differences in SST: 5.0°C in SOFeX-N and –0.5°C in SOFeX-S (Coale et al., 2004). SAGE was the northernmost of the aOIF experiments in the SO (Table 1) and, therefore, had

the highest SST (11.5°C) (Fig. 6d) (Harvey et al., 2010).

The locationsregions used for the aOIF experiments were selected following preliminary surveys to confirm that the sites were subject to HNLC conditions, i.e., based on satellite imagery, nutrient concentrations, and Fv/Fm.nitrate concentration (>~10 μM) and chlorophyll-a concentration (<1 mg m^{-3}). Initial nitrate concentrations ranged from 7.9 μM (SAGE) to 26.3 μM (SOFeX-S) (Fig. 6e and Table 3). Among the various aOIF HNLC experiment sites, the SO had the highest initial nitrate concentrations (21.4 ± 5.8 μM21.2 ± 5.8 μM), while the EP had the lowest (10.6 ± 0.2 μM). Initial nitrate and phosphate concentrations at aOIF sites in the SO followed a latitudinal gradient, with higher values to the south of 50°S (nitrate: 24.6 ± 1.6 μM and phosphate: 1.6 ± 0.2 μM) and lower values to the north (nitrate: 17.1 ± 6.7 μM16.6 ± 6.2 μM and phosphate: 1.1 ± 0.4 μM) (Table 3, Figs. 4b and 6e). The SO presented the full range of initial silicate concentrations has been covered by the various SO for all aOIF experiments, with values ranging widely from ~1.0 μM (SAGE) in the most northernmost site to ~60 μM (SOFeX-S) in the most southernmost (Table 3, Figs. 4c and 6f). With the specific intent of investigating the co-limitation of iron and silicate to diatom blooms, SOFeX-N, SAGE, and LOHAFEX were all conducted in HNLCLSi regions, with initial silicate concentrations less than 2.5 μM (Figs. 4c and 6f) (Coale et al., 2004; Harvey et al., 2010; Martin et al., 2013; Ebersbach et al., 2014). Initial pCO_2 values wasere lowest in the SO (355.6 ± 11.7 μatm) ranging from 330 μatm (SAGE) to 367 μatm (SOFeX-N) (Table 3).

As in the EP, initial SO Fv/Fm values were below ~0.33 (Table 4 and Fig. 6g), indicating a severe iron limitation. Prior to iron addition, initial chlorophyll-a concentrations ranged from ~0.15 to 0.70 mg m^{-3}. The maximum SO initial chlorophyll concentrations occurred inwere found at EIFEX, which started with a communitywhich was dominated by a micro-phytoplankton (20–200 μm) community such as diatoms (Hoffmann et al., 2006; Assmy et al., 2013), while the lowest initialminimum chlorophyll concentrations occurred inwere observed at SOFeX-N, with a communitywhich was dominated by a nano-phytoplankton (2.0–20 μm) community, such as prymnesiophytes, pelagophytes, and dinoflagellates (Coale et al., 2004).

2.2.3 Subarctic North Pacific

The subarctic NP aOIF experiments (i.e., SEEDS-1/-2 and SERIES) were performed in regions with high nitrate (15.6 ± 4.0 μM) and low chlorophyll-a concentrations (0.7 ± 0.2 mg m^{-3}) (Tables 3 and 4, Figs. 6e and h). Compared with the other aOIF experiments, these subarctic experiments had much higher initial silicate concentrations (27.3 ± 9.6 μM) (Table 3 and Fig. 6f) and shallower MLDs (Fig. 6c). Although SEEDS-1 and SEEDS-2 were conducted in almost the same location and season in the western basin (Tsuda et al., 2007), the MLD in SEEDS-1 (8.5 m) was shallower than in SEEDS-2 (28 m).

Unlike the latitudinal gradients seen in the aOIF experiments in the SO, there were longitudinal gradients in physical and biogeochemical properties in the subarctic NP experiments (Tables 3–4, Figs. 4b–c, and Figs. 6d–h). Initial SSTs in the subarctic NPSO were lower in the western region (7.5°C in SEEDS-1 and 8.4°C in SEEDS-2) than in the eastern region (12.5°C in SERIES) (Fig. 6d). Initial nutrient concentrations were much higher in the west (nitrate: 18.5 ± 0.1 μM and silicate: 34.0 ± 2.2 μM) compared to the east (nitrate: 10 μM and silicate: 14 μM) (Table 3, Figs. 4b–c and 6e–f). There was also a longitudinal gradient in chlorophyll-a concentrations, with relatively high values in the west (SEEDS-1: 0.8 mg m^{-3} and SEEDS-2: 0.8 mg m^{-3}) and low values in the east (SERIES: 0.4 mg m^{-3}) (Fig. 6h). Before the first SEEDS-1 iron infusion, micro-phytoplanktons (20–200 μm), such as the pennate diatom "*Pseudo-nitzschia turgidula*", were dominant, whereas the areas for SERIES and SEEDS-2 were exclusively occupied by pico- and nano-phytoplankton, such as *Synechococcus* and haptophytes (Tsuda et al., 2005; Boyd et al., 2005; Tsuda et al., 2005; Sato et al., 2009). Initial Fv/Fm ratios in the subarctic NP aOIF experiments were <0.3, indicating a severe iron limitation (Fig. 6g).

~~2.2.4 Subtropical North Atlantic~~

~~One exception to the focus on HNLC study sites was the FeeP experiment, which was conducted in the subtropical NA, a typically LNLC region (Figs. 4a and b, Tables 3 and 4). To test the effects of the co-limitation of iron and phosphate on PP, FeeP was conducted under much lower initial nutrient (nitrate: <0.01 μM, phosphate: ~0.01 μM, and iron: <0.4 nM) and chlorophyll a (<0.1 mg m^{-3}) conditions than any of the other experimental sites (Rees et al., 2007).~~

2.3 Iron addition and tracing methods

2.3.1 Iron addition

Iron(II) and sulfate aerosols are ubiquitous in the atmosphere and, therefore, iron-sulfate ($FeSO_4 \cdot H_2O$), a common form of combined iron that enters the ocean environment via dust deposition, has been frequently regarded as a bioavailable iron source during glacial periods (Zhuang et al., 1992; Zhuang and Duce, 1993; Spolaor et al., 2013). Iron-sulfate is a common inexpensive agricultural fertilizer that is relatively soluble in acidified seawater (Coale et al., 1998). Therefore, all aOIF experiments have been conducted by releasing commercial iron-sulfate dissolved in acidified seawater into the propeller wash of a moving ship (Fig. 5), to ensure mixing with surface waters during iron additions.

In general, background dissolved iron concentrations in HNLC regions are <0.~~4~~ 2 nM (Table 1). Iron-enrichment bottle incubation experiments performed in deck incubators using *in situ* ~~ocean~~ seawater have indicated the maximum phytoplankton growth rates in response to iron additions of 1–2 nM (Fitzwater et al., 1996). In aOIF experiments performed in the ocean, targeted iron concentrations within the ML~~D~~ have ranged between ~1 to 4 nM, depending on the site (Table 1 and Fig. 6b) (Martin et al., 1994; Coale et al., 1996; Boyd et al., 2000; Bowie et al., 2001; Tsuda et al., 2003; Coale et al., 2004; Nishioka et al., 2005; Law et al., 2006; ~~Tsuda et al., 2007; Harvey et al., 2010;~~ Smetacek et al., 2012; Martin et al., 2013). If injected iron is well dispersed throughout the ~~mixed layer~~ML within 24 hours by convective mixing (Martin and Chisholm, 1992~~Martin and Chisolm, 1992~~), the amount of added iron required to raise the background iron concentration to the target level can be calculated using a volume estimate (i.e., iron-fertilized water patch area × MLD) (Watson et al., 1991). To minimize uncertainty between the first iron addition and phytoplankton response, aOIF experiments have involved multiple-small iron injections to the surface waters in the study area at ~0.4 to ~1.5 km intervals over a 1–2-day period (Coale et al., 1998). The patch size fertilized by the first iron addition varied from 25 km^2 (e.g., FeeP; Iron(II) addition of 1840 kg) to 300 km^2 (e.g., LOHAFEX; Iron(II) addition of 2,000 kg), and by the end of these experiments had spread to a maximum ~2500 km^2 (Coale et al., 2004; Boyd et al., 2007; Martin et al., 2013) (Table 1, Fig~~s~~. 6a ~~and b~~).

During the experiments, dissolved iron concentrations increased to the target ~1.0–4.0 nM (Table 1 and Fig. 6b), but decreased to background concentrations within days. The fast decrease in dissolved iron concentrations indicates that iron was horizontally dispersed and/or rapidly incorporated into particles. These processes occur more rapidly in warmer waters (ACE CRC, 2015). For example, the first aOIF experiment, IronEx-1, showed that the dissolved iron concentration rapidly decreased from 3.6 to 0.25 nM ~~2~~ 4 days after iron addition in the center of the fertilized patch, suggesting a limit to the level required for phytoplankton growth (Coale et al., 1998; Gordon et al., 1998). As a result, except for the single iron addition experiments of IronEx-I, SEEDS-1, and FeeP (Martin et al., 1994; Tsuda et al., 2003; Rees et al., 2007), most aOIF experiments have involved multiple iron additions at the patch center, to continuously derive the stimulation of phytoplankton during the experiments. These experiments included: (2 additions) EIFEX, SERIES, SEEDS-2, LOHAFEX (Boyd et al., 2005; Tsuda et al., 2007; Smetacek et al., 2012; Martin et al., 2013); (3 additions) IronEx-2, EisenEx, SOFeX-N (Coale et al., 1996; Gervais et al., 2002; Coale et al., 2004; Nishioka et al., 2005); and (4 additions) SOIREE, SOFeX-S,

SAGE (Boyd et al., 2000; Coale et al., 2004; Bakker et al., 2005; Harvey et al., 2010) (Table 1).

2.3.2 Tracing iron-fertilized patch

To trace the iron-fertilized patch, aOIF experiments have used a combination of physical and biogeochemical approaches. All the aOIF experiments except EIFEX have used sulfur hexafluoride (SF_6) as a chemical tracer (Table 1) (Martin et al., 1994; de Baar et al., 2005; Smetacek et al., 2012). The SF_6, which is not naturally found in oceanic waters, is a useful tracer for investigating physical mixing and advection-diffusion processes in the ocean environment due to its nontoxicity, biogeochemically inert characteristics, and low detection limit (Law et al., 1998). The injected SF_6 is continuously monitored using gas chromatography with an electron capture detector system (Law et al., 1998; Tsumune et al., 2005). Usually only one SF_6 injection is necessary because background levels are generally extremely low in the ocean (<1.2 fM; f: femto-, 10^{-15}) (Law et al., 1998; Law et al., ~~2006~~2003; ~~Martin et al., 2013~~Boyd et al., 2004); however, in the SAGE experiment, with its higher mixing and lateral dilution, there were ~~three~~ 3 injections (Harvey et al., 2010). Although these earlier experiments demonstrated that the injection of artificial SF_6 is a useful technique for following iron-fertilized patches, SF_6 can only be used for limited period (~2 weeks) due to the loss at the surface through air-sea gas exchange (Law et al., 2006; Tsumune et al., 2009; Martin et al., 2013). Furthermore, caution is required because artificially high levels of SF_6 injection may negatively impact the interpretation of low-level SF_6 signals dissolved in seawater via air-sea exchange to estimate tracer-based water mass ages for understanding physical circulation (Fine, 2011). These techniques have been widely used to estimate anthropogenic carbon invasion as well as to understand ocean circulation in various ocean environments, with SF_6 being an important time-dependent tracer that has a well-recorded atmospheric history ~~(Fine, 2011)~~. Thus, ~~C~~continuous sampling systems, measuring biogeochemical parameters such as Fv/Fm, pCO_2, and chlorophyll fluorescence, have also been used as an alternative means of following iron-fertilized patches (Gervais et al., 2002; Boyd et al., 2005; Tsuda et al., 2007; Harvey et al., 2010; Smetacek et al., 2012). The Fv/Fm ratio displays a particularly rapid increase (within 24 hours) in response to ~~an~~a ~~initial~~ first iron addition (Kolber et al., 1994; Behrenfeld et al., 1996; Smetacek et al., 2012), suggesting that it is an easy and convenient tracer for following a fertilized patch.

In addition, surface-drifting buoys equipped with ~~Array for Real-time Geostrophic Oceanography (~~Argos~~RGO) and~~ or ~~Global Positioning System (~~GPS positioning systems~~) sensors~~ have been successfully used to track the movement of fertilized patches along with biogeochemical tracers (Coale et al., 1998; Boyd and Law, 2001; Law et al., 2006; Martin et al., 2013). However, floats tend to drift out of the~~deviate from the location of~~ fertilized patches under strong wind forcing (Watson et al., 1991; Law et al., 1998; Stanton et al., 1998). NASA airborne oceanographic L~~l~~idar and ocean-color satellites have also been employed to assess the large-scale effects of iron addition on surface chlorophyll in fertilized patches, as compared to surrounding regions (Martin et al., 1994; Westberry et al., 2013).

2.4 Biogeochemical responses

Biogeochemical responses to artificial iron addition, in particular, Fv/Fm ratio, chlorophyll-a, PP, nutrients, CO_2 variables, and carbon export fluxes~~)~~, are given in Tables 3–5 and Figs. 7–8. The results are important, as they have been used as a basis to determine whether the aOIF is effective. Here we address the biogeochemical response in each of the ocean basins to the aOIF experiments to date.

2.4.1 Equatorial Pacific

The IronEx-1/~~ and~~ 2 experiments, which were conducted in similar initial conditions (refer to Section 2.2.1),

presented quite different biogeochemical responses (Tables 3–4 and Fig. 7). In IronEx-1, there were small increases in the Fv/Fm ratio, chlorophyll-a concentration, ~~and~~ PP, and pCO_2 concentrations,~~,~~ but no significant changes in nutrients ~~and pCO_2 concentrations~~ (Martin et al., 1994). On the other hand, IronEx-2 found dramatic changes in biogeochemical responses, providing support for Martin's hypothesis (Coale et al., 1996). The extremely different results from the two experiments are likely to be associated with additional iron injections (IronEx-1: no extra addition; IronEx-2: 2 additional injections) and different experimental durations (IronEx-1: 10 days; IronEx-2: 17 days).

The Fv/Fm ratios provided further detail. In IronEx-1 and IronEx-2, Fv/Fm rapidly increased within ~24 hours of iron addition and reached a maximum of ~0.60 on the second day (Table 4) (Barber and Hiscock, 2006; Aiken et al., 2008). While the elevated IronEx-1 Fv/Fm ratios promptly disappeared, ~~indicating a~~suggesting rapid iron loss due to the subduction of the fertilized patch and/or adsorption onto colloidal particles (perhaps indicative of insufficient iron supply), increased IronEx-2 Fv/Fm ratios were maintained for eight days through multiple iron additions, suggesting that additional iron enrichments are likely to be a determining factor in successfully artificially increasing PP through OIF (Kolber et al., 1994; Behren~~d~~feld et al., 1996).

During IronEx-1, chlorophyll-a concentrations increased significantly (3-fold) reaching a maximum value of 0.65 mg m^{-3} in the first four days following iron addition (Martin et al., 1994). In IronEx-2, surface chlorophyll-a increased <27-fold with a maximum of 4 mg m^{-3} after day 7 (Table 4 and Fig. 7c) (Coale et al., 1996). To quantify the changes in carbon fixation following iron addition, the depth-integrated PP (from the surface to the critical depth, euphotic depth, or MLD) was estimated in the iron-fertilized patches. The depth-integrated PP values increased significantly compared to the initial values. The IronEx-2 ΔPP (where $\Delta PP = PP_{\text{post-fertilization (postf)}} - PP_{\text{pre-fertilization (pref)}}$) was the highest (~1800 mg C m^{-2} d^{-1}) of all the aOIF experiments discussed here (Table 4 and Fig. 7e).

Changes in pCO_2 during IronEx-1 were less than expected ($\Delta pCO_2 = [pCO_2]_{postf} - [pCO_2]_{pref} = -13$ µatm) (Martin et al., 1994). However, substantial drawdowns of pCO_2 ($\Delta pCO_2 = -73$ µatm) and dissolved inorganic carbon (DIC) ($\Delta DIC = [DIC]_{postf} - [DIC]_{pref} = -27$ µM) during IronEx-2 were derived through the increased PP~~The increased PP during IronEx-2 was, in turn, accompanied by drawdowns of pCO_2 ($\Delta pCO_2 = [pCO_2]_{postf} - [pCO_2]_{pref} = -73$ µatm) and dissolved inorganic carbon (DIC) ($\Delta DIC = [DIC]_{postf} - [DIC]_{pref} = -27$ µM)~~ (Table 3 and Fig. 7f) (Steinberg et al., 1998). As the bloom developed, a significant nitrate uptake (e.g., $\Delta NO_3^- = [NO_3^-]_{postf} - [NO_3^-]_{pref} = -4.0$ µM) was observed (Table 3 and Fig. 7b) and silicate concentrations also gradually decreased from 5.1 to 1.1 µM (i.e., limiting diatom growth) over eight days (Coale et al., 1996; Boyd, 2002). The depletion of macro-nutrients in fertilized patches provides indirect evidence that phytoplankton growth in surface waters ~~is~~ was driven by ~~iron fertilization~~aOIF (Boyd and Law, 2001).

Although no phytoplankton community change was observed in IronEx-1, after iron addition in IronEx-2 ~~there was~~ a shift from a pico-phytoplankton dominated community to a micro-phytoplankton dominated community was observed, resulting in ~~a~~ a diatom-dominated bloom~~s~~ (Behrenfeld et al., 1996; Coale et al., 1996; Cavender-Bares et al., 1999). Diatom biomass increased <70-fold over eight days early in the experiment, compared to a less than a 2-fold increase for the pico-phytoplankton (Landry et al., 2000). The biomass of meso-zooplankton (200–2,000 µm), such as copepods, ~~also increased~~ grew simultaneously, substantially increasing the community grazing effect of larger animals on phytoplankton standing stocks from 7.8% d^{-1} outside patch to 11.4% d^{-1} in the patch ~~(~50%)~~ (Coale et al., 1996). However, ~~the~~ grazing ~~force of the increased biomass~~ did not prevent the development of a~~was insufficient to suppress the~~ diatom bloom over eight days early in the IronEx-2 experiment (Table 4) (Coale et al., 1996; Rollwagen Bollens and Landry, 2000). The iron-induced diatom bloom began to decline after day ~8 of the experiment. The decline was probably associated with the combined effects of both the elevated grazing pressure and the onset of nutrient depletion (i.e., limitation in silicate and/or iron) (Cavender-Bares

et al., 1999; Boyd, 2002).

To determine whether the biological pump (i.e., export production) is enhanced after iron addition, the export flux of particulate organic carbon (POC) ~~can be~~was estimated using~~, individually or in combination,~~ chemical tracer~~s such as,~~ the natural radiotracer thorium-234 (^{234}Th; half-life = 24.1 days) ~~and the stable carbon isotope of particulate organic matter ($\delta^{13}C_{org}$), sediment traps, transmissometers, and underwater video profilers (UVPs)~~ (Table 5) (Bidigare et al., 1999~~; Nodder et al., 2001; Boyd et al., 2004; Buesseler et al., 2004; Coale et al., 2004; Aono et al., 2005; Tsuda et al., 2007; Smetacek et al., 2012; Martin et al., 2013~~). The ^{234}Th radionuclide has a strong affinity for particles, and the extent of ^{234}Th removal in the water column is indicative of the export of POC associated with surface PP out of the ML~~mixed layer~~ (Buesseler, 1998). IronEx-2 was the first aOIF experiment in which the POC flux ~~was estimated (Bidigare et al., 1999). The ^{234}Th deficiency~~ from the surface to 25 m was measured ~~in the iron fertilized patch to estimate iron stimulated export production in the surface layer~~ (Table 5). However, no ^{234}Th measurements were made in the unfertilized patch for comparison, and no measurements in the deep ocean were undertaken to demonstrate deep carbon export (Bidigare et al., 1999).

2.4.2 Southern Ocean

As in the EP IronEx-1/-2 experiments, there were initial rapid increases in the Fv/Fm ratio within 24 hours of iron addition, indicating that phytoplankton growth was mainly limited by iron availability. Maximum values of the Fv/Fm ratio ranged from 0.5 (SOFeX-N and LOHAFEX) to 0.65 (SOIREE and SOFeX-S) (Table 4 and Fig. 7a). However, the time taken to reach the maximum Fv/Fm ratio was usually longer than ~10 days, i.e., much slower than in IronEx-1/-2 (~2 days) (Boyd and Abraham, 2001; Gervais et al., 2002; Coale et al., 2004; Smetacek et al., 2005; Peloquin et al., 2011a; Martin et al., 2013). The slower response time in the SO compared to the EP might be attributed to the colder temperatures (~5°C vs. ~24°C) and/or the deeper MLDs (~60 m vs. ~30 m) (Figs. 6c and d)~~, which were indicative of active physical mixing~~ (Boyd and Abraham, 2001; Boyd, 2002).

The aOIF experiments in the SO recorded >2-fold increases in chlorophyll-a concentrations compared to initial levels (<0.7 mg m^{-3}), and maximum values between 1.25 mg m^{-3} (LOHAFEX) and ~3.8 mg m^{-3} (SOFeX-S) were obtained after artificial iron additions (Table 4 and Fig.7c). Satellite observations were used to investigate the changing spatial and temporal distribution of chlorophyll-a concentration~~s~~ in response to iron fertilization in the fertilized patches compared to the surrounding waters; for example, SOFeX-N/-S found elevated chlorophyll-a concentrations in fertilized patches after iron addition through satellite images (Fig. 7d) (Boyd et al., 2000; Coale et al., 2004; ~~Boyd et al., 2005;~~ Westberry et al., 2013).

~~For example, spatial changes in chlorophyll-a resulting from SOFeX-N/S iron addition were detected using Sea-viewing Wide Field-of-view Sensor (SeaWiFS) and MODerate-resolution Imaging Spectrometer (MODIS) Terra Level 2 chlorophyll-a images. The chlorophyll-a image on day 24 after iron addition in the SOFeX-N showed a phytoplankton bloom distribution resembling a long thread with 10-fold higher concentrations (1.0 mg m^{-3}) than the surrounding waters (0.1 mg m^{-3}), while a chlorophyll-a image on day 20 of SOFeX-S suggested a somewhat broader bloom pattern (0.5 mg m^{-3}), with concentrations elevated ~5-fold over the surrounding levels (~0.1 mg m^{-3}) (Fig. 7d) (Westberry et al., 2013).~~

Following artificial iron enrichment in the SO, ΔPP ranged from 360 (SAGE) to ~1356 mg C m^{-2} d^{-1} (SOFeX-N) (Table 4 and Fig. 7e). During~~In~~ SOIREE, EisenEx, and SOFeX-N/-S, ~~the~~ PP increased continuously throughout the duration of the experiments (Boyd et al., 2000; Gall et al., 2001a; Gervais et al., 2002; Coale et al., 2004; Assmy et al., 2007). However, in EIFEX, SAGE, and LOHAFEX there was a significant increase in PP for ~10 (SAGE) to – 20 (EIFEX) days in response to the iron addition, and decreasing trends after day ~12 (SAGE) – 25 (EIFEX). The decrease was due to various processes~~influences,~~ such as ~~high~~ export ~~production~~ (e.g., EIFEX), lateral dilution with surrounding waters (e.g., SAGE),

and high grazing pressure and ~~active~~ bacterial respiration (e.g., LOHAFEX) (Boyd, 2002; Gervais et al., 2002; Buesseler et al., 2004; Coale et al., 2004; Peloquin et al., 2011a; Smetacek et al., 2012; Thiele et al., 2012; Assmy et al., 2013; Martin et al., 2013; Latasa et al., 2014).

Using both microscopes and high-performance liquid chromatography pigment analysis, changes in phytoplankton community affected by iron addition have also been investigated. Most SO aOIF~~iron additions~~ experiments have resulted in blooms of diatoms~~relatively large-sized phytoplankton~~ (Boyd et al., 2007). During SOIREE and EisenEx, the dominant phytoplankton community shifted from pico- and nano-phytoplankton (e.g., pico-eukaryotes and prymnesiophytes) to micro-phytoplankton (i.e., diatoms) (Gall et al., 2001a; Gervais et al., 2002; Assmy et al., 2007). In SOFeX-S and EIFEX, diatoms were already the most abundant group prior to iron addition (Coale et al., 2004; Hoffmann et al., 2006; Assmy et al., 2013). The contribution of large diatoms became especially clear in EIFEX where ~97% of the phytoplankton bloom was attributed to this group~~these species~~ (Smetacek et al., 2012; Assmy et al., 2013). However, no taxonomic shift toward diatom-dominated ~~phytoplankton~~ communities (<5% of total phytoplankton community) was observed during~~in~~ SAGE and LOHAFEX, which were conducted under silicate-limited conditions (Harvey et al., 2010; Peloquin et al., 2011a; Martin et al., 2013; Ebersbach et al., 2014). Although SOFeX-N was conducted under low silicate conditions (Fig. 6f), the diatom biomass increased remarkably making up ~44% of the total phytoplankton community (Coale et al., 2004). This result was partly influenced by the temporary relief of silicate limitation through lateral mixing of the iron-fertilized waters with surrounding waters, with relatively higher silicate concentrations (Coale et al., 2004).

Iron-mediated increases in PP resulted in a significant uptake in macronutrients and pCO_2 throughout the aOIF experiments in the SO (except for SAGE) (Table 3, Figs. 7b and f). ~~The~~ ΔNO_3^- ranged from -3.5 µM (e.g., SOFeX-S) to -1.4 µM (e.g., SOFeX-N)~~ -1 µM (e.g., EisenEx)~~ and ΔpCO_2 ranged from -38 µatm (e.g., SOIREE) to -7 µatm (e.g., LOHAFEX). Although both initially dominated by diatoms, SOFeX-S had a somewhat greater ΔNO_3^- (-3.5 µM) and ΔpCO_2 (-36 µatm) than EIFEX (ΔNO_3^-: -1.6 µM and ΔpCO_2: -30 µatm) (Coale et al., 2004; Hoffmann et al., 2006; Smetacek et al., 2012; Assmy et al., 2013)~~ both results suggested that diatoms were abundant in the two experiments~~. However, the smaller silicate uptake~~ΔSi~~ ($\Delta Si = [Si]_{postf} - [Si]_{pref}$~~ = ~4 µM~~) observed during SOFeX-S (-4 µM)~~ (-4 µM,~~ compared to EIFEX (-11 µM) was associated with a decrease in silicification (i.e., changes ~~in~~the adjustment of frustule~~in~~ frustule thickness~~ toward thinner frustules)~~ of the dominant diatom species, ~~(i.e.,~~ *Fragilariopsis* sp.~~)~~ (, Twining et al., 2004). During~~In~~ EIFEX, the ratio of heavily silicified diatoms (e.g., *Thalassiothrix antarctica*) to total diatom biomass increased from 0.24 (day 0) to 0.46 (day 37) leading to the higher Si uptake~~larger ΔSi (i.e., more demand for silicate)~~ (Hoffmann et al., 2006; Assmy et al., 2013). Interestingly, the biogeochemical responses in SAGE were totally different from those seen in other experiments~~, in particular,~~ as increases~~of increases~~ in ΔNO_3^- (+3.9 µM), ΔpCO_2 (+8 µatm), and ΔDIC (+25 µM) ~~(Table 3, Figs. 7b and f)~~ were observed (Table 3, Figs. 7b and f). These contrasting results were thought to be the result of entrainment through vertical and horizontal physical mixing into the iron-fertilized patch of surrounding~~the~~ waters~~,~~ with higher nutrient and pCO_2~~biogeochemical~~ concentrations (Currie et al., 2011; Law et al., 2011).

SOIREE was the first aOIF experiment in the SO to estimate the downward carbon flux into deep waters (Fig. 3c). A~~They used a~~ comprehensive suite of methods was used:~~such as the deployment of a~~ drifting traps, ^{234}Th and the stable carbon isotope of particulate organic matter ($\delta^{13}C_{org}$)~~$\delta^{13}C_{org}$~~ estimates derived from high-volume pump sampling, and a beam transmissometer (Nodder and Waite, 2001). However, no measurable change in carbon export was observed in response to iron-stimulated PP (Table 5 and Fig. 8b) (Charette and Buesseler, 2000; Nodder and Waite, 2001; Trull and Armand, 2001; Waite and Nodder, 2001). During EisenEx, an increased downward carbon flux estimated from ^{234}Th deficiency was observed in the iron-fertilized patch as the experiment progressed. However, there were no clear differences between in- and

outside-patch carbon fluxes (Buesseler et al., 2005). During SOFeX-S, significantly enhanced POC fluxes below the ~~the mixed layer~~MLD similar to those observed in natural blooms, were ~~after iron enrichment~~ estimated~~obtained~~ from ^{234}Th measurements after iron enrichment~~observations (Buesseler et al., 2005). However, the absolute magnitude of these flux increases , was similar to that observed in natural blooms~~ (Buesseler et al., 2005). During~~Uniquely,~~ SOFeX-N autonomous profilers~~used only free profiling robotic Lagrangian carbon explorers~~ equipped with transmissometers recorded a~~to estimate the~~ downward carbon flux ~~without employing chemical tracers, and observed large POC flux events~~ between day ~27 and ~45 after the first iron addition (Bishop et al., 2004; Coale et al., 2004). However, it was unclear whether surface-fixed carbon was well and truly delivered ~~into intermediate/deep depths~~below the winter MLD. During~~For~~ SAGE and LOHAFEX ~~experiments~~, which were conducted under silicate limited conditions (Table 3, Figs. 4c and 6f), no significant enhancement of carbon export ~~following~~ was detected~~there was no detection of fertilization induced export by any method~~ (Table 5) (Peloquin et al., 2011a; Martin et al., 2013). This result was likely ~~to be~~ due to the dominance of~~associated with the~~ pico-~~plankton and~~plankton and grazing~~dominated community, which~~ that led to rapid recycling of organic matter in the ML~~mixed layer and less downward carbon flux~~. In contrast to the other aOIF experiments, EIFEX, which was conducted within the core of an eddy, showed~~provided~~ clear evidence of carbon export well below 500 m, ~~depth~~ stimulated by artificial iron addition (Jacquet et al., 2008; Smetacek et al., 2012). During EIFEX, the initial export flux, estimated from ^{234}Th in the upper 100 m of the fertilized patch, was ~340 mg C m^{-2} d^{-1} (Table 5 and Fig. 8a) (Smetacek et al., 2012). This value remained constant for about 24 days after iron addition. Between day 28 and 32 a massive increase in carbon export flux (maximum of ~1692 mg C m^{-2} d^{-1}) was observed in the fertilized patch, while the initial value remained constant in the unfertilized patch (Table 5 and Fig. 8a). The profiling transmissometer with high-resolution coverage confirmed this result, showing an increase in exported POC below 200 m after day 24. At least half the iron-induced biomass sank (via the formation of aggregates of diatom species, in particular '*Chaetoceros dichaeta*') to a depth of 1,000 m, with a tenfold higher sinking rate (500 m d^{-1}), compared to the initial conditions (Smetacek et al., 2012). Significant changes in export production were not found in any of the other aOIF experiments and, therefore, the impact of artificial iron addition on this component of the biological pump needs to be resolved in future aOIF experiments (Boyd et al., 2004; Smetacek et al., 2012; Martin et al., 2013).

2.4.3 Subarctic North Pacific

The observed increase in the Fv/Fm ratio in response to ~~artificial iron addition~~aOIF in the subarctic NP suggests that the relief in iron limitation may have assisted phytoplankton growth (Table 4 and Fig. 7a). SEEDS-1/-2, which were conducted in the western basin, showed continuous increases in the Fv/Fm ratio, with a maximum value of ~0.4 approximately 10 days after the first iron addition (Tsuda et al., 2003~~; Tsuda et al.~~, 2007). During SERIES, which was conducted in the eastern basin, the Fv/Fm ratio rapidly increased and reached a maximum value of 0.55 within 24 hours of the first iron addition (Boyd et al., 2005). However, the Fv/Fm ratio returned toward the initial value of <0.3 as the dissolved iron concentrations decreased to background levels (<0.2 nM) after about day 10 (Tsuda et al., 2003; Boyd et al., 2005; Tsuda et al., 2007).

Increases in chlorophyll-a concentrations were detected in the subarctic NP aOIF experiments in both basins after about the fifth day (Tsuda et al., 2003; Boyd et al., 2004; Suzuki et al., 2009). These increases were especially apparent in SEEDS-1, where they reached a maximum value of 21.8 mg m^{-3} (27 times the initial value of 0.8 mg m^{-3}) (Table 4 and Fig. 7c). This augmentation was the largest among all the aOIF experiments (Tsuda et al., 2003). The dramatic surface chlorophyll-a increase observed during SEEDS-1 was partly attributed to the particular range of seawater temperature in the region, which was conducive to diatom growth (i.e., 8–13°C) as well as to the shallower MLD (~10 m), which provided a relatively longer surface water residence time for the additional iron (Figs. 6c and d) (Noiri et al., 2005; Takeda and Tsuda,

2005; Tsumune et al., 2005). During SERIES, chlorophyll-a concentrations increased substantially from the initial value of 0.35 to ~5 mg m^{-3} over 17 days, ~~and~~ the second highest concentration recorded in~~of~~ all aOIF experiments ~~was recorded~~ (Table 4 and Fig. 7c) (Boyd et al., 2004). However, on the 18th day there was a downturn in chlorophyll-a as silicate concentrations decreased to <2 μM (Boyd et al., 2005). Although SEEDS-2 was conducted under similar initial conditions to SEEDS-1 (refer to Section 2.2.3), there was a minimal increase in chlorophyll-a (i.e., maximum value of less than 3 mg m^{-3}) (Fig. 7c). This smaller increase was thought to be the result of strong~~extensive~~ copepod grazing (SEEDS-2 had almost five times more copepod biomass than SEEDS-1) (Table 4) (Tsuda et al., 2007). A similar range~~spread~~ was seen in depth-integrated PP, which increased ~~by~~ 7-fold or more after ~~various~~ iron addition~~enrichments~~ in the subarctic NP aOIF experiments (e.g., from 300–420 to 1,000–2,000 mg C m^{-2} d^{-1}) (Table 4 and Fig. 7e).

Changes in the composition of phytoplankton groups were investigated in the subarctic NP aOIF experiments. In SEEDS-1 there was a shift from oceanic diatoms (e.g., *Pseudo-nitzschia turgidula*), with growth rates of 0.5–0.9 d^{-1}, to faster-growing neritic diatoms (e.g., *Chaetoceros debilis*, 1.8 d^{-1}) (Tsuda et al., 2005). The shift in the dominant phytoplankton species during ~~the~~ SEEDS-1 ~~experiment~~ was an important contributor to the~~what became the greatest aOIF-induced~~ recorded increase in phytoplankton biomass~~ yet recorded~~. During SERIES, the phytoplankton community changed from *Synechococcus* and haptophytes to diatoms, and the highest SERIES chlorophyll-a concentration (day 17) was associated with a peak in diatom abundance (Boyd et al., 2005). However, during SEEDS-2, no significant iron-induced diatom bloom was observed. Instead, pico-phytoplankton (e.g., *Synechococcus*~~phytoflagellates~~) (67% of the total community) dominated throughout the duration of the experiment due to the heavy grazing pressure on diatoms (Table 4) (Tsuda et al., 2007; Sato et al., 2009).

In the subarctic NP experiments, significant changes~~decreases~~ in macro-nutrient~~ uptake~~ uptake (i.e., ΔNO_3^- and ΔSi), ΔDIC, and ΔpCO_2 in response to ~~artificial iron addition~~aOIF were observed (Table 3 and Figs. 7b and f). SEEDS-1, which ~~saw~~ exhibited the largest increases in chlorophyll-a concentrations, also had the largest ΔpCO_2 (-130 μatm) and ΔDIC (-58 μM) (Table 3 and Fig. 7f). These changes led, in turn, to the largest ΔNO_3^- (-15.8 μM) (Fig. 7b) and ΔSi (-26.8 μM) (Table 3) (Tsuda et al., 2003). The second largest increase in the chlorophyll-a concentration was observed in SERIES, where drawdowns of pCO_2 (-85 μatm), DIC (-37 μM), nitrate (-8.5 μM), and silicate (-13.6 μM) were recorded. During SEEDS-2, the nitrate concentration decreased remarkably from 18.4 μM to 12.7 μM after day 5; however, there was no significant change in silicate concentrations, which would have been expected as a signal of an iron-induced diatom bloom (Tsuda et al., 2007; Suzuki et al., 2009).

Despite the formation of a massive iron-induced phytoplankton bloom during SEEDS-1, there was no large POC export flux during the observation period (Table 5) (Tsuda et al., 2003; Aono et al., 2005; Aramaki et al., 2009). During SERIES and SEEDS-2, which allowed comprehensive time-series measurements of the development and decline of the iron-stimulated bloom, POC fluxes estimated by the drifting traps in the fertilized patch displayed temporal variations (Boyd et al., 2004; Aramaki et al., 2009). ~~However, t~~The results suggested that subsequently, the drifting trap captured only a small part of the decrease in ML~~the mixed layer~~ POC ~~in MLD was subsequently captured by the drifting trap,~~ and POC flux losses were mainly governed by bacterial remineralization and mesozooplankton grazing (Boyd et al., 2004; Tsuda et al., 2007).

~~2.4.4 Subtropical North Atlantic~~

~~Not much is known about the biogeochemical responses to OIF in the subtropical NA. The FeeP experiment reported~~

~~that pico-plankton abundances increased after iron and phosphate additions (Rees et al., 2007); however, no other details of the biogeochemical response to iron addition in FeeP have been reported.~~

2.5 Summary of the significant results from aOIF experiments

~~Artificial~~ ~~The one exception was the FeeP experiment, which was performed in the subtropical NA. The initial environmental conditions associated with the physical and biogeochemical properties were determined at these OIF sites over 1–7 days before iron addition to allow the responses to the aOIF to be evaluated and quantified. Preliminary surveys confirmed that all sites, except FeeP in the subtropical NA, were subject to iron-limited HNLC conditions, with typical levels of iron <0.4 nM, nitrate >~10 μM, and chlorophyll a <1 mg m^{-3}. The initial Fv/Fm ratios were <~0.3, suggesting that phytoplankton growth was severely iron limited. In SEEDS-1, SOFeX-S, and EIFEX, prior to the addition of iron, the micro-phytoplankton (e.g., diatom) community accounted for half of the population and this was thought to be beneficial to the enhancement of export production. In the other experiments, pico- and nano-phytoplankton (e.g., *Synechococcus* and haptophytes) initially dominated; they are associated with rapid recycling in the mixed layer through the microbial loop rather than export production (Michaels and Silver, 1988; Coale et al., 1998; Landry et al., 2000; Boyd and Law, 2001; Gervais et al., 2002; Coale et al., 2004; Boyd et al., 2005; Tsuda et al., 2005; Hoffmann et al., 2006; Tsuda et al., 2007; Harvey et al., 2010; Martin et al., 2013).~~

~~Iron sulfates dissolved in acidified seawater have been commonly used for artificial iron addition because they are both highly bioavailable and inexpensive. The mixture is generally released into the ship's wake over a period of 24 hours. The amount of added iron was determined so to reach a target dissolved-iron concentration (at least >1 nM) by volume (defined as the MLD × patch area). To achieve this, a wide range of 225–2,000 kg was applied. Except in IronEx-1 and SEEDS-1, the experiments used multiple (2–4) iron additions to reinforce the increased iron levels. To trace the iron-fertilized patches, physical tracers (i.e., ARGO or other GPS-tracked drifting buoys) and/or chemical tracers such as SF_6 were used. In addition, biogeochemical parameters, such as the Fv/Fm ratio, macro-nutrients, and CO_2 variables, were used to detect responses through a comparison of before and after conditions (i.e., Δ = $[parameter]_{post}$ – $[parameter]_{pref}$). In particular, it should be noted that the Fv/Fm ratios promptly increased from <~0.3 to 0.56 (± 0.08) in the two days following iron addition, indicating a relief in the iron limitation on phytoplankton growth. The subarctic NP SEEDS-1 experiment, which was conducted under temperature conditions ideal for diatom growth (~8°C) and with shallow MLDs (~10 m), produced the greatest changes in biogeochemical parameters.~~

~~The~~ aOIF experiments have generally led to changes in the size of the phytoplankton community from pico and nano-phytoplankton to micro-phytoplankton. This effect was particularly noticeable as diatoms became the dominant species during IronEx-2, SOIREE, EisenEx, SEEDS-1, SOFeX-S, EIFEX, and SERIES. ~~, with micro-phytoplankton accounting for ~44% of total phytoplankton community in SOFeX-N. The shift to a diatom-dominated community appears be related to the initial availability of silicate (i.e., initial silicate was >~3 μM in all the experiments just listed).~~ Diatom-dominated blooms induced >4.5-fold increases in chlorophyll-a concentrations and accounted for >65% of the chlorophyll-a increase (Boyd et al., 2000; Gervais et al., 2002; Coale et al., 2004; Smetacek et al., 2012). The shift to a diatom-dominated community appears to be related to initial availability of silicate (i.e., initial silicate was >~5 μM in all the experiments ~~just~~ listed above). However, as silicate concentrations decreased to <2 μM due to removal by phytoplankton~~the elevated diatom abundance~~, ~~the extent of~~ diatom blooms rapidly declined. ~~In~~ SAGE and LOHAFEX~~,~~ ~~started with~~had~~had~~ low initial levels of silicate (<~~-~~2 μM)~~.~~. As a consequence, pico and nano-phytoplankton dominated their communities~~,~~ and diatom growth was limited by the lack of available silicate. However during SOFeX-N, initial silicate limitation (< ~3 μM) in the iron-fertilized waters was

temporarily relieved through lateral mixing with the surrounding waters that had relatively higher silicate concentrations (Coale et al., 2004), which contributed to a taxonomic shift toward diatom-dominated communities (from 16% to 44% of total phytoplankton community). These results suggest that to develop large~~a massive~~ phytoplankton bloom, ~~a~~ changeover to a diatom-dominated community after iron addition is needed. A necessary, but not sufficient condition, for such a change to occur is the availability of silicate. Silicate alone is not expected to be sufficient because diatom-dominated blooms ~~with distinct increases in the chlorophyll a concentration~~ were not observed in all experiments with high initial silicate concentrations. IronEx-1 and SEEDS-2 had the high initial silicate levels (>~4 μM)~~,~~ considered ~~which were~~ conducive to the development of a diatom-dominated bloom, but ~~the~~ blooms were~~as~~ suppressed due to high grazing pressure. Taken together, the aOIF results suggest that both mesozooplankton grazing rates ~~as well as~~and ~~the~~ initial silicate concentrations play~~ed~~ a role in limiting the stimulation of diatom-dominated blooms after artificial iron enrichment.

In ~~some~~ experiments with smaller increases (<~3 times) in plankton biomass (IronEx-1, SEEDS-2, SAGE, and LOHAFEX) there was little change in the carbon export flux~~,~~. Among previous aOIF experiments, the subarctic NP SEEDS-1 experiment, which was conducted under temperature conditions ideal for diatom growth (~8°C) and with shallow MLDs (~10 m), produced the greatest changes in surface phytoplankton biomass. However, influence of iron addition on the phytoplankton growth covers from surface to euphotic depth as added iron is mixed within the ML~~mixed layer~~ by physical processes (Coale et al., 1998). Although maximum surface chlorophyll-a concentration during SEEDS-1 (~22 mg m^{-3}) was much higher than EIFEX (~3.2 mg m^{-3}), the MLD–integrated chlorophyll-a concentrations were similar to ~250 mg m^{-2} between two experiments. Therefore, to quantify the exact changes in phytoplankton biomass in response to iron addition, it would be eligible to consider the MLD–integrated PP for comparison. During IronEx-2, SOIREE, EisenEx, SEEDS-1, SOFeX-N/-S, EIFEX, and SERIES, a >2-fold increase in PP within the ML~~mixed layer~~, with massive diatom-dominated blooms were~~as~~ observed. However, changes in the carbon export varied substantially and differed from experiment to experiment.~~while in others (IronEx-2, SOIREE, EisenEx, SEEDS-1, SOFeX-S, EIFEX, and SERIES) there was a >2-fold increase in PP within the mixed layer, with massive diatom-dominated blooms. However, even in the latter, changes in the carbon export flux differed from experiment to experiment.~~ In SEEDS-1 and SOIREE there was little increase in export flux. ~~However, it has been reported that changes in in the POC concentrations following an increase in PP can take three to four weeks (Buesseler et al., 2005), whereas these~~These two experiments were conducted over only about two weeks. The short~~,~~ ~~which suggests that the~~ duration of each experiment could have prevented the detection of~~was too short to detect~~ downward carbon export. In SERIES, there was a distinct increase in the ~~carbon~~ POC export flux within the ML~~mixed layer~~ (MLD = 30 m), but there was no increase in the carbon export flux below ~~this~~ MLD because the produced POC was rapidly remineralized due to elevated ~~abundance of~~ heterotrophic bacteria ~~was elevated after iron addition rapidly remineralized POC~~ respiration within the ML~~mixed layer~~ (Boyd et al., 2004). In SOFeX-S the export flux was enhanced at 100 ~~m depth~~ m, below the MLD (45 m). However, the changes in export flux, after iron addition, were not dramatic compared to natural values (Buesseler et al., 2005). It is possible that the duration of SOFeX-S was also insufficient (~4 weeks) (Table 2). EIFEX was the only aOIF experiment that produced significant carbon export to deeper layers (down to 3,000 m). This high flux was due to aggregate formation with fast sinking rates (Smetacek et al., 2012). EIFEX observed an entire cycle (i.e., development – decline – fate) of the iron-induced phytoplankton bloom during the 39 days of the experiment, which strongly suggests that a sufficient experimental duration is a prerequisite for detecting fully formed diatom aggregates (i.e., carbon export). It should also be noted that the rates of bacterial remineralization and grazing pressure on the diatoms were in the same range inside the fertilized patch as outside, which might have assisted the delivery of iron-induced POC from the ML~~D to the intermediate/deep depths~~to deep layers (Smetacek et al., 2012). These results suggest that to detect significant carbon export~~ed to~~below the winter MLD ~~deep waters~~ following an increase in PP, at least three conditions are necessary: (1) a shift to a diatom-dominated community, (2) low bacterial respiration and grazing pressure rates within the ML~~mixed layer~~, and

(3) a sufficient experimental duration, enabling both immediate and delayed responses to iron addition to be observed.

3 Present: Unanswered aOIF questions - export flux, possible side effects, and international law

OIF has been proposed as a potential technique for rapidly and efficiently reducing atmospheric CO_2 levels at a relatively low cost (Buesseler and Boyd, 2003), but there is still much debate. Over the past 25 years, controlled aOIF experiments have shown that substantial increases in phytoplankton biomass can be stimulated in HNLC regions through iron addition, resulting in the drawdown of DIC and macronutrients (de Baar et al., 2005; Boyd et al., 2007; Smetacek et al., 2012; Martin et al., 2013). However, the impact on the net transfer of CO_2 from the atmosphere to ~~the~~ below the winter MLD~~intermediate and/or deep ocean layers~~ through the 'biological pump' (Fig. 3c) is not yet fully understood or quantified and appears to vary with environmental conditions, export flux measurement techniques, and other unknown factors (Smetacek et al., 2012). There have also been a wide range of the estimates of atmospheric CO_2 drawdown resulting from large-scale and long-term aOIF based on model simulations~~,~~ (Joos et al., 1991; Peng and Broecker, 1991; Sarmiento and Orr, 1991; Kurz and Maier-Reimer, 1993; Gnanadesikan et al., 2003; Aumont and Bopp, 2006; Denman, 2008; Jin et al., 2008; Zahariev et al., 2008; Strong et al., 2009; Sarmiento et al., 2010). While it is generally agreed that OIF effectiveness needs to be determined through ~~both tracking and~~ quantification~~ying~~ of export fluxes, there has been no discussion ~~of~~ about which export flux measurement techniques are the most effective. ~~In the m~~Mean~~time~~while, concern has been expressed regarding possible environmental side effects in response to iron addition (Fuhrman and Capone, 1991). These side effects include the production of greenhouse gases (e.g., N_2O and CH_4) (Lawrence, 2002; Jin and Gruber, 2003; Liss et al., 2005; Law, 2008; Oschlies et al., 2010), the development of hypoxia/anoxia in the water column (Sarmiento and Orr, 1991; Oschlies et al., 2010; Keller et al., 2014), and toxic algal blooms (e.g., *Pseudo-nitzschia*) (Silver et al., 2010; Trick et al., 2010). These unwanted~~Although they are accidental, these~~ side effects could lead to negative climate and ecosystem changes (Fuhrman and Capone, 1991; Sarmiento and Orr, 1991; Jin and Gruber, 2003; Schiermeier, 2003; Oschlies et al., 2010). Model studies suggested that the unintended ecological and biogeochemical consequences in response to large-scale aOIF might cancel out the effectiveness of aOIF. For example, aOIF enhanced N_2O production may have offset (up to ~40%) the benefits of CO_2 sequestration in the EP (Sarmiento and Orr, 1991; Jin and Gruber, 2003; Oschlies et al., 2010; Hauck et al., 2016). Core unanswered questions remain concerning the different carbon export flux results from different measurement techniques (Nodder and Waite, 2001; Aono et al., 2005~~Boyd et al., 2002~~), the possible side effects that could directly influence the aOIF effectiveness, and the legal framework that is in place to regulate~~protect any imprudent~~ aOIF operations while simultaneously supporting further studies to increase our understanding of the potential risks and benefits of aOIF~~ about its potential risks and benefits~~ (Williamson et al., 2012). With the design of future aOIF experiments in mind, the following section discusses the ~~following~~ these core questions: (1) which of the methods are optimal for tracking and quantifying carbon export flux, (2) which of the possible side effects have negative impacts on aOIF effectiveness, and (3) what are the international aOIF experimentation laws and can they be ignored?

3.1 Export flux measurement methods

A traditional, direct method for estimating POC export fluxes in the water column is a sediment trap that collects sinking particles (Suess, 1980). Sediment traps are generally deployed at specific depths for days to years to produce estimates of total dried mass, POC, particulate inorganic carbon (PIC), particulate organic nitrogen (PON), particulate biogenic silica ~~(BSi)~~, $\delta^{13}C_{org}$, and ^{234}Th. A basic assumption for the use of a sediment trap is that it exclusively collects

settling particles, resulting from the gravitational sinking of organic matter produced in surface waters. However, although they are designed to ensure the well-defined collection/conservation of sinking particles, they have accuracy issues due to: 1) interference of the hydrodynamic flow across the trap (i.e., strong advective flow), 2) inclusion/invasion (accounting for 14–90% of the total POC collected) of metazoan zooplankton (e.g., copepods, amphipods, and euphausiids) capable of vertical migration (Karl and Knauer, 1989; Buesseler, 1991~~Buesseler et al., 1991~~; Buesseler et al., 2007), and 3) loss of trapped particles by bacterial decay and/or dissolution during trap deployment and storage periods (Gardner et al., 1983; Knauer et al.,1984; Kähler and Bauerfeind, 2001). The application of sediment traps for the determination of the carbon export flux is relatively more biased in the ML ~~upper ocean (surface to ~1,000 m depth)mixed layer~~ where ocean currents are generally faster and zooplankton are much more active than deep water. These issues suggest that sediment traps alone may not accurately determine carbon export fluxes within the ML~~mixed layer~~.

Even when used at the same depth, traditional sediment traps, such as the surface-tethered drifting trap and bottom-moored trap, can greatly over- or under-estimate particulate ^{234}Th fluxes compared to water-column based estimates (Buesseler, 1991~~Buesseler et al., 1991~~). The water column-based total ^{234}Th deficiency method (the sum of dissolved and particulate activities) is less sensitive than sediment traps to the issues mentioned above, and provides better spatial and temporal resolution in flux estimates (Buesseler, 1998)~~(Buesseler et al., 1998)~~. For these reasons, traditional sediment trap POC flux estimates have often been calibrated using the total ^{234}Th deficiency measured using a rosette bottle or high-volume pump samples (Coale and Bruland, 1985; Buesseler et al., 2006) as a reference. However, the water column-based ^{234}Th method is sensitive to the characterization of the POC to ^{234}Th ~~–~~ratio on sinking particles and/or the choice of ^{234}Th flux models ~~difference between above and below MLD was greater than a factor of 2–10~~ (Buesseler et al., 2006). Therefore, sampling to estimate the POC to ^{234}Th ratio should be conducted ~~both above and~~ below MLD to accurately detect downward carbon export flux into intermediate/deep waters.

Several aOIF experiments have used both sediment traps and ^{234}Th deficiency to estimate the iron-induced POC export flux (Table 5). SOIREE reported distinct differences in POC fluxes estimated from drifting traps (185 mg m^{-2} d^{-1}) at a 110~~-~~ m ~~depth~~ over day 11–13 of the experiment and ^{234}Th (~87 mg m^{-2} d^{-1}) at 100~~-~~ m ~~depth~~ (Charette and Buesseler, 2000; Nodder and Waite, 2001). While there was no measurable change in ^{234}Th-based POC fluxes during the 13 days of the SOIREE experiment (Fig. 8b), the traps suggested a 27% increase over the course of the experiment (from 146 to 185 mg m^{-2} d^{-1}) (Table 5). It was later discovered that the sediment trap-based sampling biases caused this supposed increase ~~was caused by sampling biases in trap~~ (Nodder et al., 2001; Nodder and Waite, 2001). Likewise, in SEEDS-1 ^{234}Th-based POC fluxes at 50~~-~~ m ~~depth~~ over day 9–13 were estimated to be 423 mg m^{-2} d^{-1}, but the drifting trap only recorded 141 mg m^{-2} d^{-1} at 40~~-~~ m ~~depth~~ over day 12–14, 3 times lower (Table 5) (Aono et al., 2005; Aramaki et al., 2009). This large discrepancy between the two methods might be caused by the under-sampling of POC into the drifting traps (~~Nodder and Waite, 2001;~~ Aono et al., 2005).

To resolve the potential biases in traditional sediment traps, a neutrally buoyant (and freely drifting) sediment trap (NBST) was developed (Valdes and Price, 2000; Valdes and Buesseler, 2006~~; Lampitt et al., 2008~~). Through preliminary experiments conducted in June and October 1997 at the Bermuda Atlantic Time-series Study site, Buesseler et al. (2000) showed that an NBST system could reduce the horizontal flow and invasion/inclusion of zooplankton into the trap samplers, and that NBST-based ^{234}Th fluxes were comparable with water-column based estimates. LOHAFEX has been the only aOIF experiment so far that has measured particle export using PELAGRA (Particle Export measurement using a LAGRAngian trap) sediment traps based on the NBST system deployed at two depths of 200 m and 450 m (below the winter MLD) (Martin et al., 2013). However, the PELAGRA sediment traps ~~deployed below the mixed layer (at 200 m and 450 m)~~ did not detect ~~iron fertilization~~aOIF-induced carbon export even though PP did increase within the ~~mixed layer~~ML. Water-column

based ^{234}Th measurements estimated the POC flux at a 100 -m ~~depth~~ to be ~94 mg m^{-2} d^{-1}, whereas the PELAGRA sediment traps estimated the flux at 200 m and 450 m to be ~~only <~~~12 mg m^{-2} d^{-1} (Table 5) (Martin et al., 2013). It should be noted that both sediment traps and water-column based ^{234}Th measurements have a limited ability to fully scan the vertical profile of POC fluxes and, therefore, these methods should ideally be complemented with additional techniques that can measure particle stocks at high depth resolution throughout the water column~~are of limited used in determining the fate of iron-induced POC in the water column~~.

To resolve the full column more effectively, LOHAFEX employed an underwater video profiler (UVP)~~UVP~~, which provided photographic evidence of sinking particles (particle size ≥100 µm) from the surface down to ~3,000- m ~~depth~~, with ~0.2 m vertical resolution (Smetacek and Naqvi, 2010; ~~Smetacek et al., 2010;~~ Martin et al., 2013). Through an analysis of particle size distributions, the UVP also allowed particles to be classified into fecal pellets, aggregates, and live zooplankton. Total v~~V~~ertical ~~total~~ particle volume profiles obtained from the UVP indicated ~~the~~ a maximum ~~particle flux~~ concentration at ~~a~~ 75 -m ~~depth~~ (~0.3 mm^3 L^{-1}), with a gradual decrease to 150 m (~0.15 mm^3 L^{-1}). Interestingly, large particles (i.e., zooplankton) were copious between 75- m and 100- m ~~depth~~, suggesting that there might be high grazing pressure.~~,~~ Heavy grazing ~~which~~ might explain the large discrepancy between the 100 m (water-column based ^{234}Th method) and 200 m / 450 m (PELAGRA sediment trap) POC flux estimates (i.e., rather than a sampling bias in sediment trap data) (Martin et al., 2013). To continuously monitor vertical changes in POC ~~flux~~ stocks following iron addition, EIFEX used a transmissometer, providing high vertical resolution (~24 data points per meter) and tracking of the iron-induced ~~flux~~ stocks down to ~3,000 m, even though, unlike UVPs, transmissometers do not allow classification of particles (Smetacek et al., 2012). Improving on this method, SOFeX-N applied autonomous carbon ~~flux~~ explorers equipped with transmissometers, designed to float along with the currents. Three autonomous carbon ~~flux~~ explorers were deployed, two explored the 'iron fertilized in-patch' and one acted as a 'control' outside the patch. Carbon ~~flux~~ explorers could continuously monitor carbon flux in the field for up to 18 months beyond the initial deployment, which allowed SOFeX-N to observe 'episodic raining' in the iron-fertilized waters (Bishop et al., 2004), indicating a high carbon export flux ~~long~~ after artificial iron addition. Furthermore, recent studies also reported that use of optical spike signals in particulate backscattering and fluorescence, measured from autonomous platforms such as gliders and floats, can provide~~s~~ high-resolution observations of POC flux (Briggs et al., 2011; Dall'Olmo and Mork, 2014).

The combination of multiple approaches is essential to the successful detection of ~~the~~ POC produced in response to iron addition and its fate. NBST systems (e.g., the PELAGRA sediment trap) ~~are appropriate to~~ should be deployed at two depths (i.e., below both the *in situ* MLD and the winter MLD) ~~for~~to quantif~~if~~y~~ing~~ the aOIF-induced POC flux. ~~mixed layerin the upper waters (<~400 m depth),~~ This technique is improved, ~~especially~~ when accompanied by calibration using water-column based ^{234}Th. Particle profiling systems (e.g., a transmissometer and an UVP) can ~~mounted on a CTD Rosette sampler~~ provide continuous quantitative and qualitative information about sinking particles, with high vertical resolution and full coverage of the water column (>3,000- m ~~depth~~). They are therefore useful for indirectly identifying deep carbon transport. Autonomous carbon ~~flux~~ explorers are an excellent alternative, allowing ~~the~~for continuous observation of POC fluxes during and after an aOIF experiment.

3.2 Considering environmental side effects

The purpose of aOIF is to reduce the atmospheric CO_2 level by stimulating the sequestration of oceanic carbon through artificial iron additions in the HNLC regions, mitigating the global warming threat. Beyond the benefits of aOIF

experimentation, scientists have debated the unintended secondary consequences of aOIF, such as production of climate-relevant gases and ocean ecosystem changes. Therefore, it is important to consider the possible negative consequences of aOIF to evaluate whether the aOIF experiments are effective (i.e., net profit: positives > negatives).

To investigate changes in climate-relevant gas emissions produced by biological activities and/or photochemical reactions before and after iron additions, the production of CH_4, N_2O, DMS, and halogenated volatile organic compounds (HVOCs) w~~ere~~as measured during aOIF experiments (Liss et al., 2005), because their emission may lead to unintended consequences negating the desired effects of aOIF experiments on carbon sequestration. Among the climate-relevant gases, CH_4 has a ~20 times greater warming potential than CO_2 (IPCC, 1990). However, CH_4 has been considered to be relatively low risk because most of the CH_4 formed in the ocean is used as an energy source for microorganisms and is converted to CO_2 before reaching the sea surface (Smetacek and Naqvi, 2008; Williamson et al., 2012). The SO nOIF experiment conducted in 2011 year (i.e., Kerguelen Ocean and Plateau compared Study-2: KEOPS-2) (Table 1) showed that CH_4 concentrations were 4-fold higher in the naturally iron-fertilized patch than in the control area (Farías~~Farias~~ et al., 2015). During the SOFeX-N experiment, measurements of dissolved CH_4 indicated concentrations were slightly elevated, i.e., by less than 1% (1.74 ppmv in fertilized patch and 1.72 ppmv outside fertilized patch) (Wingenter et al., 2004). Simulated SO large-scale aOIF has suggested that a 20% enhancement of CH_4 emissions would offset only <1% (~4 Tg C yr^{-1}) of the resulting carbon sequestration (Oschlies et al., 2010). Hence, additional CH_4 production from aOIF experiments is not likely to be ~~a serious problem~~significant.

On the other hand, N_2O has a relatively long lifetime in the atmosphere (~110 years) and has a global warming potential about 300 times greater than CO_2 (Forster et al., 2007). The ocean is already a significant source of atmospheric N_2O (Nevison et al., 2003; Bange, 2006). Oceanic N_2O is mainly produced by bacterial remineralization. Therefore, increases in N_2O production after iron additions are expected and, in the long run, contribute to an increase rather than a decrease in the greenhouse effect (Fuhrman and Capone, 1991~~Bange, 2006~~). During the SOIREE experiment, a significant increase (~4%) in mean N_2O saturation in the pycnocline (65–80 m) of the fertilized patch (104.4 ± 2.4%), as compared to outside the fertilized patch (100.3 ± 1.7%), was associated with an increased phytoplankton biomass (Law and Ling, 2001). Measurements of N_2O saturation during SERIES also showed increases of 8% at 30–50 m, which were coincident with the accumulation of ammonium and nitrite attributable to increases in bacterial remineralization following increased POC levels (Boyd et al., 2004; Law, 2008). SOIREE-based model estimates suggested that potential N_2O production at timescales longer than six weeks would subsequently offset carbon reduction benefits resulting from the bacterial remineralization of additional carbon fixation by 6–12% (Law and Ling, 2001). This estimate is in line with the N_2O offset of 6–18% suggested by a modeling study (Jin and Gruber, 2003) and the 5–9% suggested by a more recent modeling study investigating the effectiveness of long-term and large-scale SO aOIF (Oschlies et al., 2010). However, the SO nOIF experiment (i.e., KEOPS-2) suggested that nOIF acts~~ed~~ as both a sink and a source for N_2O (Farías~~Farias~~ et al., 2015). Excess N_2O was not found after iron addition in EIFEX, where significant vertical export through the formation of rapidly sinking aggregates was found (Walter et al., 2005; Law, 2008). One explanation for the absence of N_2O accumulation below the EIFEX patch might be the limited bacterial remineralization due to the rapid export of organic matter well below the 500~~-~~ m ~~depth~~ to the seafloor (Law, 2008~~Walter et al., 2005~~). Based on the results of previous studies, no consensus has yet been reached on the exact extent of additional N_2O production after iron additions. However, because there is the potential for excessive N_2O production that would not only impact the effectiveness of aOIF experiments but also positively contribute to global warming, further studies are required to reach a conclusion.

Unlike N_2O emissions, which have the potential to offset the effectiveness of aOIF, DMS, a potential precursor of

sulfate aerosols that cause cloud formation, may contribute to the homeostasis of the earth's climate by countering the warming due to increased CO_2 emissions (Charlson et al., 1987). DMS is produced by the enzymatic cleavage of planktonic dimethylsulfoniopropionate (DMSP). Microzooplankton grazing on nano-phytoplankton (e.g., haptophytes) is a key factor controlling oceanic DMS production (Dacey and Wakeham, 1986; Gall et al., 2001b; Park et al., 2014). The production of DMS in response to iron addition was measured during all aOIF experiments. In the EP and SO, DMS production increased, but in the subarctic NP, it remained constant or decreased (~~Lawrence, 2002;~~ Boyd et al., 2007; Law, 2008). There were significant short-term increases in DMS production in IronEx-2 (from 2.5 to 4.2 nM), SOIREE (from 0.5 to 3.4 nM), EisenEx (from 1.9 to 3.1 nM), and SOFeX-N (7.7 nM in the fertilized patch and 1.6 nM outside the fertilized patch) (Turner et al., 1996; Turner et al., 2004; Wingenter et al., 2004; Liss et al., 2005; Wingenter et al., 2007). The maximum DMS production observed was a 6.8-fold increase after iron addition in SOIREE (Turner et al., 2004). During an early SOIREE experiment, the dominant phytoplankton species were haptophytes, and DMS production was increased by microzooplankton grazing on DMSP-rich haptophyte species (i.e., Prymnesiophyceae) (Gall et al., 2001b). Similarly, a 4.8-fold enhancement of DMS production was observed in SOFeX-N. Estimates derived by the extrapolation of SOFeX-N DMS production results suggested that fertilizing ~2% of the SO area over the course of a week would derive a 20% increase of the total SO DMS flux~~enhance DMS production by 20%~~, which would lead to a 2°C decrease in air temperature over the SO (Wingenter et al., 2007). On the other hand, the SO nOIF experiment (KEOPS-1) conducted in 2005 year (Table 1) showed that DMS production was not markedly higher in the naturally fertilized area compared to the surrounding waters (Belviso et al., 2008). Twenty years simulated SO aOIF did not produce accumulation of DMS in surface waters (Bopp et al., 2008). Interestingly, there were no significant changes in DMS production after iron additions in the western subarctic NP SEEDS-1/-2 experiments, despite increases in PP (~~Turner et al., 1996;~~ Takeda and Tsuda, 2005; Nagao et al., 2009). Furthermore, in the eastern subarctic NP, SERIES DMS production increased from 8.5–10.9 nM on day 1 to a maximum of 41.2 nM on day 10, but decreased to <0.03 nM by the end of the experiment due to an increase in bacterial abundance (Table 4) (Levasseur et al., 2006). It is therefore difficult to predict the iron-induced DMS response, because OIF itself is not the only source of DMS. Based on the results of previous aOIF experiments, DMS production was sensitive in the EP and SO, but was less sensitive in the subarctic NP (Law, 2008). These results indicate that further process and modeling studies for each region are required to determine the production and degradation of DMS, both following iron fertilization and in the natural environment.

HVOCs, such as CH_3Cl, CH_3Br, and CH_3I, are well known for their ability to destroy ozone in the lower stratosphere and marine boundary layer (Solomon et al., 1994), and were also measured during past aOIF experiments (Wingenter et al., 2004; Liss et al., 2005). However, no consistent results have been reported for HVOCs production (Liss et al., 2005). In SOFeX-N, the impact of iron addition on HVOCs was complicated, with CH_3Cl concentrations remaining unchanged, and CH_3Br concentrations increasing by 14% (6.5 pptv in the fertilized patch and 5.7 pptv outside the fertilized patch), while CH_3I concentrations decreased by 23% (4.9 pptv in fertilized patch and 6.4 pptv outside the fertilized patch) (Wingenter et al., 2004). In contrast, CH_3I concentrations increased ~2-fold during EisenEx (Liss et al., 2005). Such a complicated response suggests that, as for DMS, further study is needed to fully understand natural cycling of HVOCs and their responses to ~~iron fertilization~~aOIF.

~~Secondly,~~Another important consideration is the extent to which the effectiveness of aOIF ~~may also be~~is cancelled out by its tendency to ~~offset~~ lead~~ing~~ to ~~changes in the~~ ocean ecosystem ~~following a~~OIF,changes such as a decrease in dissolved oxygen and an increase in domoic acid (DA) levels. The decomposition of iron addition-enhanced biomass may cause decreased oxygen concentrations in subsurface waters ~~(Williamson et al., 2012).~~, but ~~Although~~ mid-water oxygen depletion has not been reported from aOIF experiments to date (Williamson et al., 2012).~~,~~ Eearly modeling studies suggest that anoxic

conditions may develop after long-term, and large- scale aOIF (Fuhrman and Capone, 1991; Sarmiento and Orr, 1991). However, more sophisticated and realistic models suggest that OIF produces whereas a recent study based on more sophisticated models showed sustained well-oxygenated conditions (O_2 ≈ 12017 µM) even under simulated aOIF south of 30°S on a 100 year timescale from 2010 to 2110, without the development of anoxic conditions, even under climate change scenarios, without the development of anoxic conditions, even under climate change scenarios (Oschlies et al., 2010; Keller et al., 2014). Thus, hypoxia/anoxia development in response to iron additions is unlikely to be a primary concern. Keller et al. (2014) found –that simulated SO large-scale aOIF south of 40°S from the year 2020 to 2100 under a high CO_2 emissions scenario (Meinshausen et al., 2011) may develop suboxia (O_2 <10 µM) in the year 2125. Clearly, the circumstances under which a substantial decline in oxygen inventory can be caused by large-scale aOIF need further study.

The changes in phytoplankton community composition after iron addition discussed in Section 2.4 may also have unintended consequences.; fFor example, they such changes could lead to potentially toxic species dominating plankton assemblages (Silver et al., 2010; Trick et al., 2010). Some aOIF experiments (e.g., IronEx-2, SOIREE, EisenEx, SOFeX-N/-S, and SERIES) generated large blooms dominated by pennate diatoms belonging to the genus '*Pseudo-nitzschia*' (de Baar et al., 2005;– Silver et al., 2010; Trick et al., 2010). Some '*Pseudo-nitzschia*' species have the capacity to produce the neurotoxin DA that canis known to detrimentally affect marine ecosystems. However, no DA was found during EisenEx and SERIES, even though '*Pseudo-nitzschia*' were dominant (Gervais et al., 2002; Assmy et al., 2007; Marchetti et al., 2008; Assmy et al., 2007). However, pPhytoplankton samples used to estimate DA production have sometimesd been stored for a long time before the analysis, for example, 12 years in IronEx-2 and four years in SOFeX-S (Silver et al., 2010). Trick et al. (2010) argued that storage might have affected the DA content in the samples, which led tophytoplankton samples stored for a long time would have degraded, leading to an under-estimation in DA concentrationsproduction. This implies that accurate information about changes in DA production in response to iron addition might not be available. HowerNevertheless, the IronEx-2, and SOFeX-S experiments found discernable changes in DA production, were foundeven if the original DA might have degraded in IronEx-2, and SOFeX-S experiments (Silver et al., 2010). It is likely that detection was possible because these several phytoplankton samples were (e.g., *Pseudo-nitzschia* abundance: 1.3 × 10^6 cells L^{-1} in IronEx-2 and 7.5 × 10^4 cells L^{-1} in SOFeX-S) collected with a net tows (20- to 30-µm mesh phytoplankton nets), which were suitable to detect these changes –provided concentrated samples of larger phytoplankton including *Pseudo-nitzschia* (e.g., *Pseudo-nitzschia* abundance: 1.3 × 10^6 cells L^{-1} in IronEx-2 and 7.5 × 10^4 cells L^{-1} in SOFeX-S). During IronEx-2 and SOFeX-S, high cell abundances of '*Pseudo-nitzschia*' (10^6 and 10^5 cells l^{-1}, respectively) combined with moderate DA cell quotas (0.05 and 1 pg DA $cell^{-1}$, respectively) produced toxin levels as high as 45 ng DA l^{-1} in IronEx-2 and 220 ng DA l^{-1} in SOFeX-S in the water, respectively, i.e., toxin levels high enough to damage marine communities in coastal waters (Scholin et al., 2000; Schnetzer et al., 2007). Trick et al. (2010) suggested that large-scale iron fertilizationsOIF may induce DA accumulation with developing toxic *Pseudo-nitzschia* blooms. However, large uncertainties remain as Trick et al. (2010) simply extrapolated DA concentration based on bottle incubation experiments with HNLC surface waters to the DA production expected from large-scale iron fertilizationOIF. ThereforeAs a result, it is necessary to clarify/quantify DA production in response to iron additionsaOIF, with concentrated larger phytoplankton samples (i.e., large numbers of cells) using collected using a net tows (20- to 30-µm mesh phytoplankton net). This, onceHere again, existing research indicates that such the processes involved need to be better understood in the natural environment before the ramifications of aOIF can be fully appreciatedunderstood.

Whether aOIF is a viable carbon removal strategy is still under debate (Boyd et al., 2007; Smetacek and Naqvi, 2008). The production of climate-relevant gases such as N_2O, DMS, and HVOCs, which is influenced by the remineralization of sinking particles that follows OIF-induced blooms, the decline in oxygen inventory, and the production of DA are particularly important to understand. These processes can directly and indirectly modify the effectiveness of carbon

sequestration, with either positive or negative ~~the~~ effects ~~being either positive or negative~~. Therefore, monitoring ~~of the~~ declines in oxygen content and production of climate-relevant gases and DA to evaluate the effectiveness of aOIF as a geoengineering approach is essential. The processes ~~is~~discussed here represent~~s only a few of many possible~~the current state of knowledge concerning aOIF side effects. The direct and indirect environmental consequences ~~of aOIF~~ remain largely unresolved due to the inconsistent and highly uncertain outcomes of the experiments conducted so far, as well as our poor understanding of the processes involved under both nOIF and aOIF conditions (Chisholm et al., 2001; Johnson and Karl, 2002; Williamson et al., 2012). Therefore, considering the increasing evidence for the necessity to keep warming at or below 1.5°C (Rogelj et al., 2015), there continues to be a need to quantitatively determine the effectiveness of aOIF as a long-term means for reducing atmospheric CO_2 through the quantification of aOIF side effects.

3.3 Regulation of aOIF: International law of the sea as it applies to aOIF

To prevent pollution of the sea from human activities, the international Convention on the Prevention of Marine Pollution by Dumping of Wastes and Other Matter (London Convention, 1972) was amended in 1972. In 1996, contracting parties to the London Convention adopted the Protocol to the London Convention (London Protocol, 1996). This places legal restrictions on the dumping of wastes and other matter that may cause hazard, harm, and damage in the ocean and/or interfere with the marine environment. However, the London Convention & Protocol (LC/LP) did not establish specific laws to protect the ocean environment against the side -effects of fertilization activities. In 2007, several commercial companies (e.g., GreenSea Venture [http://www.greenseaventure.com] and Climos [http://www.climos.com]) promoted large-scale (10,000 km^2) commercial aOIF as a climate mitigation strategy and as a means to gain carbon credits (Chisholm et al., 2001; Buesseler and Boyd, 2003; Freestone and Rayfuse, 2008). Meanwhile, assessments of the effectiveness of aOIF have been limited to small fertilized patches (25–300 km^2) (Fig. 6a) due to the time and expense of comparing fertilized and unfertilized areas (ACE CRC, 2008). As discussed earlier, these small-scale~~area~~ experiments have left many unanswered scientific questions regarding both the effectiveness and the potential impacts of aOIF (Lawrence, 2002; Buesseler and Boyd, 2003). In the same year, noting the potential risks and benefits, the LC/LP scientific group released a statement on large-scale ocean fertilization and recommended that ocean fertilization activities be evaluated carefully to ensure that such operations were not contrary to the aims of the LC/LP.

At the 2008 LC/LP meeting, the contracting parties adopted Resolution LC-LP.1 (2008) on the regulation of ocean fertilization. This resolution prohibited ocean fertilization activities until such time that specific guidance could be developed to justify legitimate scientific research. There was an exception for 'small-scale scientific research studies within coastal waters' to permit the development of proposals that would lead to an assessment framework for scientific ocean fertilization research (Resolution LC-LP.1, 2008). In the meantime, there was a call to develop an assessment framework for ocean fertilization experiments to assess, accurately, scientific research proposals (Resolution LC-LP.1, 2008). In 2010, LC/LP parties developed Resolution LC-LP.2 (2010), adopting an "Assessment Framework for Scientific Research Involving Ocean Fertilization" to be used to assess, on a case-by-case basis, whether any proposed ocean fertilization activity constitutes legitimate scientific research falling within the aims and scope of Resolution LC-LP.1 (2008) (Fig. 9) (Resolution LC-LP.2, 2010). This framework demands preliminary scientific research prior to any aOIF experimentation. There must be a transparent/reasonable scientific rationale/purpose to the experiment and a risk analysis must be undertaken using parameters such as problem formulation, site selection, exposure and effect assessment, and risk characterization and management. Monitoring is also required as an integral component of all approved (i.e., legitimate) scientific aOIF research activity to assess ecological impacts and to review actual vs. intended geo-engineering benefits (ACE CRC, 2015). In October 2013,

the LC/LP parties adopted amendments that categorize aOIF as marine geo-engineering, thereby prohibiting operational aOIF activities, but enabling aOIF scientific research that meets the permit conditions through the environmental assessment framework (Resolution LP.4 (8), 2013). This means that large-scale (i.e., >300 km^2 based on previous aOIF experiments; exact areal sizes are not determined in the LC/LP) and/or commercial aOIF (e.g., 'the 2012 Haida Gwaii Iron Dump' off the west coast of Canada) are currently banned by international regulations. Under LC/LP, commercial aOIF efforts cannot proceed because of the large uncertainties related to large-scale aOIF.

4 Future: Designing future aOIF experiments

Scientific aOIF research has focused on improving our understanding of the effectiveness, capacity, and risks of OIF as an atmospheric CO_2 removal strategy both in the future and the past (in particular glacial periods). Although the first aOIF experiments took place more than twenty years ago, the legal and economic aspects of such a strategy in terms of the international laws of the sea and carbon offset markets are not yet clear (ACE CRC, 2015). Nonetheless, previous small-scale aOIF experiments have demonstrated a considerable potential for easily and effectively reducing atmospheric CO_2 levels. Accordingly, physical/biogeochemical/ecological models and nOIF experiments (long-term) have been conducted in an effort to overcome some of the limitations of short-term aOIF experiments (e.g., spatial and temporal scales) and to predict the effectiveness of long-term and large-scale fertilization (Aumont and Bopp, 2006; Blain et al., 2007; Denman, 2008; Pollard et al., 2009; Sarmiento et al., 2010). For example, earlier global biogeochemical models have indicated that massive fertilization could draw down atmospheric CO_2 by as much as 107 µatm in 100 years (Joos et al., 1991; Peng and Broecker, 1991; Sarmiento and Orr, 1991; Kurz and Maier-Reimer, 1993). Recent global models, with more realistic ecosystem and biogeochemical cycles predict values closer to a 33 µatm drawdown in atmospheric CO_2 (Aumont and Bopp, 2006). These results suggest that the amount of carbon sequestration resulting from aOIF represents only a modest offset, i.e., a contribution of ~10% over the range of IPCC future emission scenarios (IPCC, 2000; Aumont and Bopp, 2006; Denman, 2008; Zahariev et al., 2008). The nOIF experiments have also produced much higher carbon sequestration rates than the small-scale aOIF experiments (Morris and Charette, 2013). Furthermore, the results from nOIF experiments do not support the potential negative impacts proposed for OIF experiments, even at larger scales (Belviso et al., 2008). However, these nOIF results do not guarantee that aOIF as a geoengineering approach is able to achieve the high effectiveness associated with carbon sequestration and enables a simple scaling-up as a prediction tool, because the nOIF experiments differ from the aOIF experiments in the mode of iron supply. In particular, nOIF is a continuous and slow process and its iron source is based on the upwelling of iron-rich subsurface waters to the surface layer, whereas aOIF is intended to be episodic, with massive short-term iron additions (Blain et al., 2007). In addition, in nOIF it is difficult to accurately identify iron sources due to the complexity of the system, whereas in aOIF there is quantitative and qualitative information about iron additions and sources (Blain et al., 2008). Contrary to the results of aOIF experiments in the SO (e.g., SOIREE and SOFeX-N), no increase in DMS emissions was found in SO nOIF experiments ~~in the SO~~ (i.e., ~~Kerguelen Ocean and Plateau compared Study:~~ KEOPS-1) (Belviso et al., 2008), suggesting that it might be difficult to identify the potential long-term negative effects of aOIF through the ~~by~~ study of~~ing the~~ naturally fertilized systems, at least in the SO. Therefore, it is important to continue undertaking small-scale studies to obtain a better understanding of natural processes in the SO as well as to assess the associated risks, and so lay the groundwork for evaluating the potential effectiveness and impacts of large-scale aOIF as a geoengineering solution to anthropogenic climate change. It is therefore of paramount importance that future aOIF experiments continue to focus on the effectiveness and capacity of aOIF as a means of reducing atmospheric CO_2, but they should also carefully consider the location (i.e., 'where'), timing (i.e., 'when'), and duration (i.e., 'how long'), as well as modes of iron addition (i.e., 'how'), tracing methods/parameters measurements/protocols (i.e., 'what'), and side effects on

marine/ocean ecosystems (i.e., 'what concerns'). They~~is~~ should~~will~~ build on the results of previous aOIF experiments to~~,~~ develop our understanding of the magnitude and sources of uncertainties, and provide confidence in our ability to reproduce results.

Where: The first consideration for a successful aOIF experiment is the location. The dominance of diatoms in phytoplankton communities plays a major role in increasing the biological pump because diatom species can sink rapidly as aggregates or by forming resting spores to efficiently bypass the intense grazing pressure of mesozooplankton (e.g., copepods, salps, and krill) and export carbon out of the winter ML~~mixed layer~~ (Tréguer et al., 1995; Salter et al. 2007; Assmy et al., 2013; Rembauville et al., 2015; Rembauville et al., 2016).~~,~~ Previous aOIF experiments have shown that silicate concentration and mesozooplankton stocks (i.e., copepods) ~~is~~are the crucial factors ~~inducing~~ controlling diatom blooms (Boyd et al., 2000; Gervais et al., 2002; Coale et al., 2004; Tsuda et al., 2007; Smetacek et al., 2012). Therefore, to obtain the greatest possible carbon export flux in response to iron addition, aOIF experiments should be designed in regions with high silicate concentrations and low grazing pressure. It will be important to conduct initial surveys ~~on~~to measure the degree of grazing pressure in HNLC region with high silicate concentrations~~,~~ such as in the subarctic NP (e.g., SEEDS-1 experiment) and the south of SO PF~~ of the SO~~ (e.g., SOFeX-S experiment) >~15 μM (Fig. 4c). In selecting sites for ~~iron fertilization~~aOIF, it is also important to distinguish the iron-fertilized patch from the surrounding unfertilized waters to easily and efficiently observe~~, easily and efficiently,~~ iron-induced changes (Coale et al., 1996). Ocean eddies provide an excellent setting for aOIF experimentation because they tend to naturally isolate interior waters from the surrounding waters. Mesoscale eddies range from 25~~–~~ to 250 km in diameter and maintain their characteristics for 10–100 days after formation (Morrow and Le Traon, 2012; Faghmous et al., 2015). Eddy centers~~, in which fertilization is performed,~~ tend to be subject to relatively slow current speeds, with low shear and high vertical coherence, providing ideal conditions for tracing the same water ~~column~~ from the surface to ~~the deep layers~~below the winter MLD, ~~as well as~~while simultaneously minimizing lateral stirring and advection (Smetacek et al, 2012). ~~Therefore, f~~Finding an appropriate eddy setting in a study area should be a high priority consideration when ~~conduc~~ design~~t~~ing an aOIF experiment (Smetacek and Naqvi, 2008).

When: The second consideration for a successful aOIF experiment is timing, which includes when an experiment starts. PP in ocean environment is generally limited by nutrient availability and/or by light availability, often referred to as a single- or co-limitation. PP in the SO, a representative HNLC region, is subject to co-limitation by micro/macro-nutrients (i.e., iron and/or silicate) and light availability (Mitchell et al., 1991). ~~In~~ To the south of the SO PF~~ of SO~~, phytoplankton blooms usually occur during ~~the~~ early summer (i.e., from late December to early January) due to an ~~the~~ increase~~ing~~ in the nutrient flux from ~~the~~ subsurface waters induced by winter mixing~~to the surface waters by the shoaling of MLD~~, along with the favorable light conditions provided by a shoaling of ML~~the receipt of sufficient solar radiation~~ (Moore and Abbott, 2002). Prior to December, phytoplankton growth is mainly limited due to light availability (Mitchell et al., 1991; Veth et al., 1997; Abbott et al., 2000), while after January (i.e., during late summer and early autumn from February to March) it is mainly limited due to iron and silicate availability (Abbott et al., 2000; Mengelt et al., 2001; Nelson et al., 2001). In previous SO aOIF experiments ~~in the SO that have been~~ conducted between spring and early autumn, PP was mainly limited by iron and/or silicate availability rather than light availability (except when heavy clouds led to severe light limitation, only occurred for a few days during EisenEx) (Gervais et al., 2002; Bakker et al., 2005; ~~de Baar et al., 2005;~~ Smetacek and Naqvi, 2008; Peloquin et al., 2011b). T~~In addition, t~~he grazing pressure of mesozooplankton ~~(i.e., copepods)~~ on large diatoms was also a major limiting factor in diatom production (~~Coale et al., 2004;~~ Schultes et al., 2006; Smetacek and Naqvi, 2010~~Martin et al., 2013~~), and was generally higher during late summer and early autumn (February to March) (Hunt and Hosie, 2006; Rembauville et al., 2015~~Le Quéré et al., 2016~~). Considering the key factors (i.e., micro/macro nutrient availability, light availability, and grazing pressure) controlling PP in the SO, the most appropriate timing for the start of a~~n~~ SO aOIF

experiment ~~to start in the SO~~ is likely to be the early summertime (i.e., late December to early January).

How long: The third consideration for a successful aOIF experiment is the duration. Although the periods that phytoplankton blooms have been maintained by aOIF have lasted from ~10 to ~40 days (Kolber et al., 1994; Martin et al., 1994; Coale et al., 1996; Boyd et al., 2000; Boyd et al., 2004; Coale et al., 2004; Tsuda et al., 2005; ~~Coale et al., 2004; Boyd et al., 2004;~~ Smetacek et al., 2012), it has also been suggested that most aOIF experiments did not cover the full response times from onset to termination (Boyd et al., 2005). For example, SOIREE and SEEDS-1 had relatively short observation periods (13 days) and saw increasing trends in PP throughout the experiments (Fig. 10a), suggesting that the observation period should have been extended. Furthermore, after the end of SOIREE, ocean color satellite images showed continued high chlorophyll-a concentrations (>1 mg m^{-3}) in the iron fertilized patch, which was visible as a long ribbon shape that extended some 150 km for >40 days (~6 weeks) after the ~~initial~~ first iron addition (Fig. 10b) (Abraham et al., 2000; Westberry et al., 2013). This indicates that short experimental durations may not be sufficient for detecting the full influence of ~~artificial iron additions~~aOIF on PP and ecosystem (Figs. 8b and 10) (Boyd et al., 2000; Tsuda et al., 2003; de Baar et al., 2005). SOFeX-S also resulted in relatively low export production despite the high PP due to the experimental duration being insufficient to cover the termination of the phytoplankton bloom. However, SERIES, SEEDS-2, EIFEX, and LOHAFEX did fully monitor all phases of the phytoplankton bloom from onset to termination. EIFEX, the third-longest aOIF experiment, at 39 days, was the only one that observed iron-induced deep export production between day 28 and 32 (Table 5 and Fig. 8a) (Smetacek et al., 2012; Assmy et al., 2013). Furthermore, long-term observations covering the later stage of bloom development during nOIF experiments resulted in much higher ~~Fe:~~C:Fe export efficiencies compared to the short-term aOIF (Blain et al., 2007; Pollard et al., 2009). Based on previous aOIF experiments, it would, therefore, be important to detect the full phase of a phytoplankton bloom to determine accurately the amount of iron-induced POC exported out of the winter ML~~mixed layer~~. The observation period is, therefore, an importantly considering factor ~~to consider~~with regard to ~~in~~ budget and effectiveness estimates. It is suggested that the experimental duration should be a minimum of ~40 days based on the SOIREE experiment, which produced the longest iron-induced bloom (~~i.e., the longevity of~~ >40 days). In addition, autonomous observation platforms are essential~~ly required~~ to monitor post-assessment of effectiveness, capacity, and risks of aOIF for at least 12 months after ~~the~~ experiment termination.

How: The fourth consideration for a successful aOIF experiment lies in the strategy/approach of adding and maintaining dissolved iron within the ML~~upper mixed layer~~ to produce a phytoplankton bloom. First, the chemical form for iron addition should be acidified iron-sulfate, which is less expensive and more bioavailable than other iron compounds. The amount of iron-sulfate required is calculated according to the target concentration of the dissolved iron and volume (MLD × patch size). Based on bottle incubation experiments, target iron concentrations of ~2–4 nM are recommended to stimulate maximum phytoplankton growth due to the rapid losses of added iron by horizontal advection/diffusion and oxidation to poorly bioavailable iron(III) (Coale et al., 1996; Coale et al., 1998; Bowie et al., 2001). For patch size, a biogeochemical model study showed that a fertilized patch size of 156 km^2 maintained an iron concentration above 0.3 nM for 56 days, while a longer period of 194 days required a fertilized patch size of 160,000 km^2 (Xiu and Chai, 2010). ~~This is because, compared to larger iron-fertilized patches, a smaller patch size tended to lose iron more rapidly due to dilution effects with unfertilized water.~~ As a consequence of expansion and dilution, ~~P~~previous aOIF experiments also produced similar results to this model study. The lateral dilution rate (<0.25 d^{-1}) during SAGE, which had the smallest fertilized patch size (36 km^2) of the SO experiments, was two times higher than the rates (<0.11 d^{-1}) in the SO experiments with a larger fertilized patch size (e.g., EIFEX fertilized with a patch size of 167 km^2 and SOFeX-~~N/~~S fertilized with a patch size of 225 km^2) (Coale et al., 2004; Harvey et al., 2010; Law et al., 2011; Smetacek et al., 2012). Therefore, it would be more appropriate to fertilize a large area (e.g., LOHAFEX had the largest aOIF experiment at 300 km^2), which would reduce the dilution effect with unfertilized

waters (Xiu and Chai, 2010). Based on a ~2 nM iron concentration for a patch size of 300 km^2 and MLD of ~60 m, it would need ~2,000 kg of iron(II) to be applied in a fertilization experiment. Iron should be released into the wake of a ship, with the release track describing an expanding spiral (or square) in the eddy center, with a regular interval of ~1 km throughout the patch, because it is easier to locate a fertilized patch than a point release (Watson et al., 1991). In addition, it should be completed within ~24 hours because of the time-dependent phytoplankton response within the iron-fertilized patch. Previous aOIF experiments have shown that multiple iron additions (≥2 infusions) are needed to maintain the dissolved iron concentration required to derive maximum phytoplankton growth within the fertilized patch. For example, in SOIREE it was found that ~~four~~ 4 additions of iron at intervals of about three days led to persistently high levels of both dissolved and particulate iron within the ML~~mixed layer~~, with a rapid reduction at the end of the experiment, combined with an increase in the concentration of iron-binding ligands (Bowie et al., 2001). In both EIFEX and SOFeX-S, it was also found that multiple iron(II) infusions (in particular, ~~two~~ 2 infusions with intervals of 13 days in EIFEX and ~~four~~ 4 infusions with intervals of four days in SOFeX-S) allowed iron to persist in the ML~~mixed layer~~ longer than its expected oxidation kinetics. The relatively low oxidation rates were related to a combination of photochemical production, slow oxidation and, possibly, organic complexation (Croot et al., 2008). Blain et al. (2007) explained that the higher carbon sequestration effectiveness of nOIF experiments compared to aOIF experiments partly resulted from the slow and continuous iron addition that occurs in the natural environment. Large amounts of iron addition at one time can lead to a substantial loss of artificially added iron. Therefore, for an experimental duration of >~40 days, a minimum of ~~two~~2 (or ~~three~~3) iron infusions at intervals of ~10–15 days would be required to prevent the iron limitation on phytoplankton growth, based on the ~~EisenEx and~~ EIFEX experiment~~s~~ (~~Nishioka et al., 2005;~~ Smetacek et al., 2012).

What: The fifth consideration for a successful aOIF experiment is the effective tracing of the fertilized patch, including the detection of carbon sequestration (Buesseler and Boyd, 2003). All previous aOIF experiments used physical tracers, in particular GPS and ~~ARGO~~ Argos equipped drifting buoys, to follow the iron fertilized patch. The release of GPS and Argos equipped drifting buoys at the center of the patch after the iron infusions would provide a visual map showing the tracked positions of the fertilized patch, because ~~A~~a drifting buoy is a natural and passive system moving along with the currents.~~,~~ However,~~ but~~ it can be escaped from the fertilized patch due to the action of strong winds (Tsumune et al., 2005). ~~Therefore, the release of GPS and ARGO Argos equipped drifting buoys at the center of the patch after the iron infusions would provide a visual map showing the tracked positions of the fertilized patch.~~ An inert chemical tracer, such as SF_6, would also be an excellent option for following the fertilized patch after iron addition. Previous aOIF experiments have shown that the SF_6 measurements based on underway sampling systems can be used to accurately determine ~~accurately~~ time-dependent vertical and lateral transport of iron-fertilized patches. However, tracing via SF_6 allows for only a limited period (~2 weeks) due to air-sea gas exchange (Law et al., 2006; Tsumune et al., 2009; Martin et al., 2013). Thus, ~~M~~many subsequent aOIF experiments have also used tracing methods based on the observation of biogeochemical parameters (such as the Fv/Fm ratio, chlorophyll fluorescence, and underway pCO_2) before and after iron addition (Martin et al., 1994; Coale et al., 1996; Boyd et al., 2000; ~~Coale et al., 2004;~~ Boyd et al., 2004; Coale et al., 2004; Tsuda et al., 2005; Smetacek et al., 2012). The Fv/Fm ratio can be easily and promptly used as an indicator to track the fertilized patch due to its rapid response to iron addition. Direct measurements of carbon export fluxes to determine the effectiveness of aOIF should be conducted by deploying an NBST at two depths: (1) ~~within the mixed layer~~just below the *in situ* MLD~~mixed layer~~ to detect increases in iron-induced POC in the surface layer along with the calibration of the ~~a~~ water-column based ^{234}Th method, and (2) ~~below~~ at the ~~depth of the~~ winter MLD~~mixed layer~~ ~~MLD~~ to detect iron-induced ~~export~~ carbon export fluxes ~~into intermediate/deeper waters~~ below winter MLD ~~–~~(Bidigare et al., 1999; Nodder et al., 2001; Boyd et al., 2004; Buesseler et al., 2004; Coale et al., 2004; Aono et al., 2005; Buesseler et al., 2005; Tsuda et al., 2007; Smetacek et al., 2012; Martin et al., 2013). Sinking-particle profiling systems (e.g., transmissometers mounted on autonomous floats and gliders)~~, such as a transmissometer and UVP~~ that

measure ~~and photograph~~ sinking particles~~,~~ could provide a record of the temporal and vertical evolution of iron-induced POC stocks through successive depth layers down to ~3,000 ~~-~~m ~~depth~~ for ~20 months after deployment, once calibrated using POC fluxes measured from sediment traps and/or the ~~a~~ water-column based ^{234}Th method (Bishop et al., 2004; Smetacek et al., 2012~~; Martin et al., 2013~~). Repeat casts with UVPs mounted on the rosette could also serve a similar purpose providing a photographic history of the water column (Martin et al., 2013). Future aOIF experiments would benefit from these technological advances, enabling a more efficient tracing of the carbon export flux and particle size and composition at higher vertical and temporal resolution than has been possible in the past. Hence, the application of an NBST system and water-column based ^{234}Th method to direct flux estimates, combined with autonomous sinking-particle profilers of a transmissometer and an UVP, will enable the quantitative and qualitative evaluation of the effectiveness of aOIF and direct observation of iron-induced carbon export fluxes after artificial iron additions.

What concerns: The sixth consideration for a successful aOIF experiment is the monitoring of possible side effects. The LC/LP parties recently adopted Resolution LC-LP.2 (2010), which includes the "Assessment Framework for Scientific Research Involving Ocean Fertilization". This considers possible side effects on marine/ocean ecosystems after artificial iron additions, such as the production of climate-relevant gases and negative ecosystem changes, which are vital to assess when proposing an aOIF experiment. The emissions of climate-relevant gases, such as N_2O, DMS, and HVOCs, may directly contribute to warming or cooling effects, and oxygen decrease and toxic DA production may have a negative impact on marine/ocean ecosystems (Law, 2008; Silver et al., 2010; Trick et al., 2010; Williamson et al., 2012), resulting in significant offsets against the benefits of aOIF experiments. However, there is little quantitative and qualitative information regarding possible side effects following the previous aOIF experiments. Therefore, the future monitoring of these potential side effects is a prerequisite to evaluate accurately the effectiveness of an aOIF experiment in the future. The possible side effects after an aOIF experiment can be continuously monitored from optical sensors equipped autonomous moored profiler and/or autonomous benthic vehicle (e.g., crawler, which is capable to perform a long-term benthic oxygen measurements for ~~–~~~12 months) (Dunne et al., 2002; Purser et al., 2013; Wenzhöfer et al., 2016).

In summary, to maximize the effectiveness of aOIF experiments in the future, we suggest a design that incorporates several conditions. (1) Experiments are conducted in the center of an eddy structure when grazing pressure is low and silicate levels are high (e.g., in the case of SO, at the south of PF during the early summer). (2) Shipboard observations are made during a minimum of ~40 days, with multiple iron injections (iron infusions of ~2,000 kg at least ~~two~~2 (or ~~three~~3) times, with an interval of ~10–15 days, to fertilize a patch of 300 km^2 to obtain a ~2 nM concentration). (3) The iron-fertilized patch is traced using both physical (e.g., a drifting buoy) and biogeochemical (e.g., SF_6 and the Fv/Fm ratio) tracers. (4) NBST system and water-column derived ^{234}Th method are employed at two depths (i.e., ~~one is within~~ just below the *in situ* ~~the~~ MLD~~mixed layer~~ ~~(i.e., 10–20 m below)~~ and~~–~~ ~~another is~~ at the ~~depth of the~~ winter MLD~~mixed layer (i.e., ~450 m)below it~~), with autonomous profilers equipped with an UVP and a transmissometer~~s~~ to estimate accurately the carbon export flux. (5) The side effects on marine/ocean ecosystems~~, are monitored,~~ including decline in oxygen contents and the production of climate-relevant gases (e.g., N_2O, DMS, and HVOCs) and toxic DA, are monitored~~.~~ using optical sensors equipped autonomous moored profiler and/or autonomous benthic vehicle.

5. Design of the Korean Iron Fertilization Experiment in the Southern Ocean (KIFES)

5.1 Background - Bransfield Basin

A science-oriented aOIF project, KIFES (Fig. 11), was launched in 2016 with research funding from the Korean Ministry of Oceans and Fisheries. This project was largely managed by the Korea Polar Research Institute (KOPRI) with domestic collaborators (i.e., Incheon National University, Inha University, Pusan National University, Hanyang University, and Yeonsei University) and strengthened by international collaborators (i.e., Alfred-Wegener-Institut (AWI), Institute of Geological and Nuclear Sciences, ~~Massachusetts Institute of Technology~~ Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution (~~MIT~~ WHOI), University of Otago, University of California at Irvine, McMaster University, University of South Florida, Royal Netherlands Institute for Sea Research, and Dalhousie University). KIFES had four main aims. (1) To conduct the first scientific aOIF experiment complying with the "Assessment Framework for Scientific Research Involving Ocean Fertilization" after the framework was accepted from the LC/LP in 2010. (2) To evaluate the effectiveness of scientific aOIF in terms of atmospheric carbon sequestration (i.e., to identify/quantify significant increases in iron-induced carbon export fluxes ~~into intermediate/deeper waters~~below the winter MLD) in the SO. (3) To determine the environmental conditions that would maximize the effectiveness of aOIF. (4) To quantitatively and qualitatively monitor short- and long-term possible side effects derived from previous aOIF experiments.

A location near the eastern Bransfield Basin was considered for the site of KIFES based on the following three criteria: (1) the possibility of diatom blooms, (2) the proximity to meso-scale eddies, and (3) the availability of historical oceanographic data. The development of a diatom bloom is the first prerequisite to maximize the effectiveness of an aOIF experiment. The paleoclimate team at KOPRI had found geological evidence of massive amounts of organic carbon buried in the sediments, especially in the diatomaceous ooze layer, in the eastern Bransfield Basin on the Antarctic Peninsula (Yoo et al., 2016). The well-preserved diatomaceous ooze layer (Bahk et al., 2003; Kang et al., 2003; Bak et al., 2015) indicates high accumulation rates of fast sinking diatoms, suggesting the existence of a strong 'biological pump (i.e., significant export production)' in this basin. In addition, this basin has a high silicate concentration of ~30 μM (Fig. 4c), which is a fundamental condition to produce a massive diatom bloom. Despite the favorable environmental conditions, the Fv/Fm ratio in/near the eastern Bransfield Basin (<~0.43) (Park et al., 2013) was lower than the maximum value of 0.65 measured during the aOIF experiments in the SO (e.g., SOIREE and SOFeX-S), suggesting an iron limitation on diatom growth. Therefore, we hypothesized that the input of bioavailable iron enabling an increase in productivity and export would lead to a massive enhancement of the diatom flux in this basin. Accordingly, we expected that an aOIF in the diatom-dominated region with high sinking rates near the eastern Bransfield Basin would be more effective for carbon export, as compared to the previous aOIF experiments conducted in the SO. This hypothesis, based on sedimentary evidence, was not considered in the site selection for previous experiments. A second important factor was the presence of stable eddies in/near the eastern Bransfield Basin (Kahru et al., 2007; Sangrà et al., 2011), providing coherent structures that made it possible to track effectively the iron-induced carbon export fluxes (Smetacek et al., 2012). For example, Thompson et al. (2009) showed that a large standing eddy (~40 km in diameter) was centered at ~62°S and 54°W and remained for ~30 days using historical drifters released during the period 1989–2005, and 40 drifters released in February 2007 as part of the Antarctic Drifter Experiment: Links to Isobaths and Ecosystems project. Satellite sea-level height images have indicated meso-scale eddies with long lifespans in/near the eastern Bransfield Basin (https://www.aviso.altimetry.fr/). Additionally, several historical oceanographic datasets are available for this basin (Grelowski et al., 1986; Helbling et al., 1995; Figueiras et al., 1999; Kang et al., 2001; Varela et al., 2002; Khim et al., 2005). The historical datasets provide general oceanographic characteristics about sites for an aOIF experiment as well as basic information helpful for designing the experiment, including a preliminary hydrographic survey. Unfortunately, KIFES has lost its source of funding. Nevertheless, optimism prevails that alternative funding will be found at a future date and the following section is intended, therefore, to provide a basic set of design guidelines, with the expectation that an opportunity to move forward with KIFES will occur in the near future.

5.2 A plan for the future: KIFES

The KIFES design entails a five-year project plan modeled on the 'EIFEX' program that found deep carbon by conducting an aOIF experiment in the center of an eddy structure. The KIFES project would include a preliminary environmental survey both outside and inside the center of an eddy structure formed in/near the eastern Bransfield Basin, a scientific aOIF experiment, and an assessment of the full KIFES project. In this section, we introduce the major goals, objectives, and main tasks of KIFES.

5.2.1 Year one plan

Goals: (1) Data collection with regard to oceanographic conditions in/near the eastern Bransfield Basin, including both eddy development and distribution. (2) Establishment of the study aims, hypothesis, and site for the KIFES experiment.

Objective: To understand the physical and biogeochemical oceanography of relevance to the eastern Bransfield Basin as an aOIF site through an analysis of earlier datasets and a review of published papers.

Main tasks: (1) Review databases of physical and biogeochemical parameters from previous surveys conducted in/near the eastern Bransfield Basin. (2) Review the eastern Bransfield Basin oceanographic conditions using data analysis and references. (3) Establish the study aims, hypothesis, and site in/near the eastern Bransfield Basin for an aOIF experiment, based on the results obtained from tasks (1) and (2). (4) Design an oceanographic cruise map for the first preliminary survey in/near the eastern Bransfield Basin. (5) Analyze eddy development and distribution using satellite data in/near the eastern Bransfield Basin. (6) Prepare scientific instruments for ocean physical and biogeochemical monitoring. (7) Establish an international collaborative aOIF network. (8) Submit KIFES field program proposal for the 'Initial Assessment' to determine that KIFES falls within the remit of ocean fertilization and should be evaluated in the LC/LP assessment framework based on the results from tasks (1)~~, and (2)~~.

5.2.2 Year two plan

Goal: First preliminary hydrographic survey to provide a foundational understanding of oceanographic conditions in/near the eastern Bransfield Basin.

Objectives: (1) To obtain information about oceanographic conditions from *in situ* measurements in/near the eastern Bransfield Basin. (2) To provide background information before the KIFES experiment.

Main tasks: (1) Using the ice breaker RV *ARAON*, undertake a field investigation in/near the eastern Bransfield Basin to determine physical and biogeochemical parameters associated with both carbon sequestration and aOIF side effects (e.g., decline in oxygen inventory and production of N_2O, DMS, HVOCs, and DA), based on the first-year results. (2) Prepare an 'Environmental Assessment' for the LC/LP assessment framework based on the first-year results and a preliminary hydrographic survey.

5.2.3 Year three plan

Goals: (1) Preliminary hydrographic survey outside/inside the center of an eddy structure prior to the KIFES experiment. (2) Approval of KIFES from LC/LP.

Objectives: (1) To compare oceanographic conditions inside and outside the center of an eddy structure formed in/near the eastern Bransfield Basin prior to the KIFES experiment. (2) To obtain a permission on the basis that the proposed KIFES is legitimate scientific research from the LC/LP.

Main tasks: (1) Using the ice breaker RV *ARAON*, detect an eddy formed in/near the eastern Bransfield Basin using observations from acoustic Doppler current profilers (ADCPs) and satellites. (2) Conduct intensive physical and biogeochemical field investigations both inside and outside the center of an eddy structure. (3) Assess the physical and biogeochemical properties outside vs. inside the center of an eddy structure prior to KIFES. (4) Establish a final design for KIFES. (5) Submit the research results for 'Environmental Assessment' stage of the LC/LP assessment framework and obtain approval for the KIFES experiment via the 'Decision Making' process from the LC/LP.

5.2.4 Year four plan

Goal: Conduction of the KIFES scientific aOIF experiment in the center of an eddy structure during the early summertime (Fig. 11).

Objective: To conduct a scientific aOIF experiment in the center of an eddy structure formed near/in the eastern Bransfield Basin.

Main tasks: (1) Using the ice breaker RV *ARAON*, detect an eddy formed in/near the eastern Bransfield Basin using observations from ADCPs and satellites, and investigate the initial environmental conditions for ~4 days before KIFES. (2) Execute the KIFES field campaign during a >~40-day period with the eddy structure. (3) At least ~~two~~2 (or ~~three~~3) iron additions at intervals of ~15 days, with each iron injection being ~2,000 kg following a spiral ship track, with a regular interval of ~1 km to create a patch size of 300 km^2 (target dissolved iron concentration of ~2 nM). (4) Trace the fertilized patch with deployments of GPS and ~~ARGO~~ Argos equipped drifting buoys, biogeochemical tracers (SF_6 and Fv/Fm ratio) employing underway-sampling systems, and gliders equipped with biogeochemical sensors. (5) Measure iron-induced carbon export fluxes for the regions both inside and outside the center of an eddy structure using NBST systems at two depths (i.e., ~~one is~~ just below the *in situ* ~~the~~ MLD~~mixed layer (i.e., 10–20 m below)within the mixed layer~~ and ~~another is~~ at ~~the depth of~~ the winter MLD~~mixed layer (i.e., ~450 m)below it~~) along with the calibration of water-column based ^{234}Th measurements and autonomous profilers equipped with a transmissometer and an UVP. (6) Monitor possible side effects, such as the decline in oxygen contents and the production of climate-relevant gases and toxic DA, using optical sensors equipped autonomous moored profiler and/or autonomous benthic vehicle. (7) Monitor continued responses after KIFES termination using satellite observations and autonomous profilers. (8) Assess the effectiveness of carbon sequestration and environmental (ocean and atmosphere) side effects for KIFES and prepare the KIFES assessment for the 'Results of Monitoring' stage of the LC/LP assessment framework.

5.2.5 Year five plan

Goal: Integrated assessment of the KIFES project.

Objective: To evaluate whether small-scale scientific aOIF experimentation can be an effective tool for detecting the effectiveness of artificially iron-induced export production and determining any negative impacts on climate change.

Main tasks: (1) Submit the KIFES assessment report. (2) Submit scientific results to international journals. (3) Collect feedback regarding the KIFES project from international scientific/oceanographic communities. (4) Produce a final aOIF

experimental summary (including main tasks (1)–(3)). (5) Evaluate effectiveness and environmental side effects of large-scale SO aOIF via more realistic simulations under various scenarios with ocean biogeochemical models using the integrated results of KIFES. (~~6~~5) Submit a final report of the KIFES assessment to the LC/LP.

5.3 Final Remark

None of the KIFES scientists have commercial interests (i.e., carbon credits) related to aOIF experiments. The interests of KIFES participants all lie in the detailed investigation of the biogeochemical effects of scientific ~~artificial iron addition~~aOIF in the SO and in aOIF as a possible geo-engineering method to mitigate the climate change effects we will face in the future. We envisage a future where the KIFES, or similar projects, can be resumed, enabling a more robust assessment of the potential of aOIF as a geo-engineering solution to help reduce atmospheric CO_2 concentrations. A continuation of the KIFES project would provide fundamental information and guidelines for future scientific aOIF experiments in HNLC regions, as well as improving our understanding of SO biogeochemistry. The risks and side effects of aOIF should be thoroughly investigated to calm international concerns. Finally, we emphasize that international cooperation is essential for a project as organizationally and scientifically complex as KIFES, and that we seek to improve our knowledge and provide a positive outlook for the Earth's future.

6 Summary

To test Martin's hypothesis, a total of 13 scientific aOIF experiments have been conducted in HNLC regions during the last 25 years. These aOIF experiments have resulted in increases of PP and drawdowns of macro-nutrients and DIC. In most experiments, the phytoplankton group has tended to shift from small-sized to large-sized plankton cells (mostly diatom-dominated). However, their effectiveness in enhancing export production has not been confirmed, except for EIFEX. Likewise, the possible environmental negative side effects in response to iron addition, such as decline in oxygen contents and the production of climate-relevant gases and toxic DA, could not be fully evaluated due to the widely differing outcomes, with large uncertainties depending on aOIF experimental conditions and settings. In particular, the monitoring of N_2O, DMS, and HVOCs is essential to determine the effectiveness of aOIF as a geoengineering approach, because these potential trace gas emissions can directly and indirectly modify the carbon reduction benefits resulting from aOIF. Furthermore, oxygen decline and toxic DA production may cause serious damage to marine/ocean ecosystems. Therefore, the validation and suitability of aOIF for the mitigation of rapidly increasing atmospheric CO_2 levels is a subject of vigorous debate. At present, large-scale and/or commercial aOIF is prohibited by international regulation, while small-scale aOIF experimentation for scientific purposes is permitted. To maximize the effectiveness of aOIF, future aOIF experiments should be conducted by carefully considering the major factors including the methods for iron addition, tra~~c~~king methods, measurement parameters, location, timing, and experimental duration, under international aOIF regulations. Finally, we envisage a future where the KIFES project, or a similar alternative, becomes a reality so that we may determine whether aOIF is a promising geo-engineering solution.

Acknowledgements: We thank two reviewers for their valuable comments on the manuscript. We also thank Dr. Victor Smetacek (AWI) for his valuable comments and time on the development of KIFES project. Thanks to all the people who contributed to the scientific OIF experiments. This research was a part of the project titled 'Korean Iron Fertilization Experiment in the Southern Ocean (KOPRI, PM 16060)' funded by the Ministry of Oceans and Fisheries, Korea. This work

was partly supported by the National Research Foundation of Korea (NRF) grant funded by the Korea government (MSIP) (No. 2015R1C1A1A01052051), the K-AOOS (KOPRI, PM17040) project funded by the MOF, and the KOPRI projects (PE17030 and PE17140)~~.~~. A. M. Macdonald was supported by NOAA grant #NA11OAR4310063 and internal WHOI funding. The last two authors (Il-Nam Kim and Kitae Kim) act as co-corresponding authors for this work.

References

Abbott, M.R., Richman, J.G., Bartlett, J.S.: The spring bloom in the Antarctic Polar Frontal Zone as observed from a mesoscale array of bio-optical sensors. Deep-Sea Res., Part II 47, 3285– 3314, 2000.

Abelmann, A., Gersonde, R., Cortese, G., Kuhn, G., and Smetacek, V.: Extensive phytoplankton blooms in the Atlantic sector of the glacial Southern Ocean, Paleoceanography, 21, PA1013, 2006.

Abraham, E. R., Law, C. S., Boyd, P. W., Lavender, S. J., Maldonado, M. T., and Bowie, A. R.: Importance of stirring in the development of an iron-fertilized phytoplankton bloom, Nature, 407, 727-730, 2000.

ACE CRC: Position Analysis: Ocean Fertilisation: Science and Policy Issues, ACE CRC, Hobart, 2008.

ACE CRC: Position Analysis: Ocean Fertilisation, ACE CRC, Hobart, 2015.

Aiken, J., Hardman-Mountford, N. J., Barlow, R., Fishwick, J., Hirata, T., and Smyth, T.: Functional links between bioenergetics and bio-optical traits of phytoplankton taxonomic groups: an overarching hypothesis with applications for ocean colour remote sensing, J. Plankton Res., 30, 165-181, 2008.

Anderson, M. A. and Morel, F. M. M.: The influence of aqueous iron chemistry on the uptake of iron by the coastal diatom *Thalassiosira weissflogii*, Limnol. Oceanogr., 27, 789-813, 1982.

Aono, T., Yamada, M., Kudo, I., Imai, K., Nojiri, Y., and Tsuda, A.: Export fluxes of particulate organic carbon estimated from $^{234}Th/^{238}U$ disequilibrium during the Subarctic Pacific Iron Experiment for Ecosystem Dynamics Study (SEEDS 2001), Prog. Oceanogr., 64, 263-282, 2005.

Aramaki, T., Nojiri, Y., and Imai, K.: Behavior of particulate materials during iron fertilization experiments in the Western Subarctic Pacific (SEEDS and SEEDS II), Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 56, 2875-2888, 2009.

Arrieta, J. M., Weinbauer, M. G., Lute, C., and Herndl, G. J.: Response of bacterioplankton to iron fertilization in the Southern Ocean, Limnol. Oceanogr., 49, 799-808, 2004.

Assmy, P., Henjes, J., Klaas, C., and Smetacek, V.: Mechanisms determining species dominance in a phytoplankton bloom induced by the iron fertilization experiment EisenEx in the Southern Ocean, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. I, 54, 340-362, 2007.

Assmy, P., Smetacek, V., Montresor, M., Klaas, C., Henjes, J., Strass, V. H., Arrieta, J. M., Bathmann, U., Berg, G. M., Breitbarth, E., Cisewski, B., Friedrichs, L., Fuchs, N., Herndl, G. J., Jansen, S., Krägefsky, S., Latasa, M., Peeken, I., Röttgers, R., Scharek, R., Schüller, S. E., Steigenberger, S., Webb, A., and Wolf-Gladrow, D.: Thick-shelled, grazer-protected diatoms decouple ocean carbon and silicon cycles in the iron-limited Antarctic Circumpolar Current, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA., 110, 20633-20638, 2013.

Aumont, O. and Bopp, L.: Globalizing results from ocean *in situ* iron fertilization studies, Global Biogeochem. Cycles, 20, GB2017, 2006.

Bahk, J. J., Yoon, H. I., Kim, Y., Kang, C. Y., and Bae, S. H.: Microfabric analysis of laminated diatom ooze (Holocene) from the eastern Bransfield Strait, Antarctic Peninsula, Geosci. J., 7, 135-142, 2003.

Bak, Y.-S., Yoon, H. I., Yoo, K.-C., and Lee, Y.-U.: Diatom succession representing the paleoclimatic change from laminated sediments around Antarctica, J. Korean Earth Sci. Soc., 36, 190-197, 2015.

Bakker, D. C. E., Watson, A. J., and Law, C. S.: Southern Ocean iron enrichment promotes inorganic carbon drawdown, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 48, 2483-2507, 2001.

Bakker, D. C. E., Bozec, Y., Nightingale, P. D., Goldson, L., Messias, M.-J., de Baar, H. J. W., Liddicoat, M., Skjelvan, I., Strass, V., and Watson, A. J.: Iron and mixing affect biological carbon uptake in SOIREE and EisenEx, two Southern Ocean iron fertilisation experiments, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. I, 52, 1001-1019, 2005.

Bange, H. W.: New Directions: The importance of oceanic nitrous oxide emissions, Atmos. Environ., 40, 198-199, 2006.

Barber, R. T. and Hiscock, M. R.: A rising tide lifts all phytoplankton: Growth response of other phytoplankton taxa in diatom-dominated blooms, Global Biogeochem. Cycles, 20, GB4S03, 2006.

Barnola, J. M., Raynaud, D., Korotkevich, Y. S., and Lorius, C.: Vostok ice core provides 160,000-year record of atmospheric CO_2, Nature, 329, 408-414, 1987.

Behrenfeld, M. J., Bale, A. J., Kolber, Z. S., Aiken, J., and Falkowski, P. G.: Confirmation of Iron Limitation of Phytoplankton Photosynthesis in the Equatorial Pacific-Ocean, Nature, 383, 508-511, 1996.

Belviso, S., Bopp, L., Mosseri, J., Tedetti, M., Garcia, N., Griffiths, B., Joux, F., Obernosterer, I., Uitz, J., and Veldhuis, M. J. W.: Effect of natural iron fertilisation on the distribution of DMS and DMSP in the Indian sector of the Southern Ocean, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 55, 893-900, 2008.

Berg, G. M., Mills, M. M., Long, M. C., Bellerby, R., Strass, V., Savoye, N., Röttgers, R., Croot, P. L., Webb, A., and Arrigo, K. R.: Variation in particulate C and N isotope composition following iron fertilization in two successive phytoplankton communities in the Southern Ocean, Global Biogeochem. Cycles, 25, GB3013, 2011.

Bidigare, R. R., Hanson, K. L., Buesseler, K. O., Wakeham, S. G., Freeman, K. H., Pancost, R. D., Millero, F. J., Steinberg, P., Popp, B. N., Latasa, M., Landry, M. R., and Laws, E. A.: Iron-stimulated changes in ^{13}C fractionation and export by equatorial Pacific phytoplankton: Toward a paleogrowth rate proxy, Paleoceanography, 14, 589-595, 1999.

Bishop, J. K. B., Wood, T. J., Davis, R. E., and Sherman, J. T.: Robotic Observations of Enhanced Carbon Biomass and Export at 55°S During SOFeX, Science, 304, 417-420, 2004.

Blain, S., Queguiner, B., Armand, L., Belviso, S., Bombled, B., Bopp, L., Bowie, A., Brunet, C., Brussaard, C., Carlotti, F., Christaki, U., Corbiere, A., Durand, I., Ebersbach, F., Fuda, J.-L., Garcia, N., Gerringa, L., Griffiths, B., Guigue, C., Guillerm, C., Jacquet, S., Jeandel, C., Laan, P., Lefevre, D., Lo Monaco, C., Malits, A., Mosseri, J., Obernosterer, I., Park, Y.-H., Picheral, M., Pondaven, P., Remenyi, T., Sandroni, V., Sarthou, G., Savoye, N., Scouarnec, L., Souhaut, M., Thuiller, D., Timmermans, K., Trull, T., Uitz, J., van Beek, P., Veldhuis, M., Vincent, D., Viollier, E., Vong, L., and Wagener, T.: Effect of natural iron fertilization on carbon sequestration in the Southern Ocean, Nature, 446, 1070-1074, 2007.

Blain, S., Sarthou, G., and Laan, P.: Distribution of dissolved iron during the natural iron-fertilization experiment KEOPS (Kerguelen Plateau, Southern Ocean), Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 55, 594-605, 2008.

Blain, S., Capparos, J., Guéneuguès, A., Obernosterer, I., and Oriol, L.: Distributions and stoichiometry of dissolved nitrogen and phosphorus in the iron-fertilized region near Kerguelen (Southern Ocean), Biogeosciences, 12, 623-635, https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-12-623-2015, 2015.

Bopp, L., Aumont, O., Belviso, S., and Blain, S.: Modelling the effect of iron fertilization on dimethylsulphide emissions in the Southern Ocean, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 55, 901-912, 2008.

Bowie, A. R., Maldonado, M. T., Frew, R. D., Croot, P. L., Achterberg, E. P., Mantoura, R. F. C., Worsfold, P. J., Law, C. S., and Boyd, P. W.: The fate of added iron during a mesoscale fertilisation experiment in the Southern Ocean, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 48, 2703-2743, 2001.

Boyd, P. W., Watson, A. J., Law, C. S., Abraham, E. R., Trull, T., Murdoch, R., Bakker, D. C. E., Bowie, A. R., Buesseler, K. O., Chang, H., Charette, M., Croot, P., Downing, K., Frew, R., Gall, M., Hadfield, M., Hall, J., Harvey, M., Jameson, G., LaRoche, J., Liddicoat, M., Ling, R., Maldonado, M. T., McKay, R. M., Nodder, S., Pickmere, S., Pridmore, R., Rintoul, S., Safi, K., Sutton, P., Strzepek, R., Tanneberger, K., Turner, S., Waite, A., and Zeldis, J.: A mesoscale

phytoplankton bloom in the polar Southern Ocean stimulated by iron fertilization, Nature, 407, 695-702, 2000.

Boyd, P. W. and Abraham, E. R.: Iron-mediated changes in phytoplankton photosynthetic competence during SOIREE, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 48, 2529-2550, 2001.

Boyd, P. W. and Law, C. S.: The Southern Ocean Iron RElease Experiment (SOIREE)—introduction and summary, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 48, 2425-2438, 2001.

Boyd, P. W.: The role of iron in the biogeochemistry of the Southern Ocean and equatorial Pacific: a comparison of in situ iron enrichments, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 49, 1803-1821, 2002.

Boyd, P. W., Law, C. S., Wong, C. S., Nojiri, Y., Tsuda, A., Levasseur, M., Takeda, S., Rivkin, R., Harrison, P. J., Strzepek, R., Gower, J., McKay, R. M., Abraham, E., Arychuk, M., Barwell-Clarke, J., Crawford, W., Crawford, D., Hale, M., Harada, K., Johnson, K., Kiyosawa, H., Kudo, I., Marchetti, A., Miller, W., Needoba, J., Nishioka, J., Ogawa, H., Page, J., Robert, M., Saito, H., Sastri, A., Sherry, N., Soutar, T., Sutherland, N., Taira, Y., Whitney, F., Wong, S.-K. E., and Yoshimura, T.: The decline and fate of an iron-induced subarctic phytoplankton bloom, Nature, 428, 549-553, 2004.

Boyd, P. W., Strzepek, R., Takeda, S., Jackson, G., Wong, C. S., McKay, R. M., Law, C., Kiyosawa, H., Saito, H., Sherry, N., Johnson, K., Gower, J., and Ramaiah, N.: The evolution and termination of an iron-induced mesoscale bloom in the northeast subarctic Pacific, Limnol. Oceanogr., 50, 1872-1886, 2005.

Boyd, P. W., Jickells, T., Law, C. S., Blain, S., Boyle, E. A., Buesseler, K. O., Coale, K. H., Cullen, J. J., de Baar, H. J. W., Follows, M., Harvey, M., Lancelot, C., Levasseur, M., Owens, N. P. J., Pollard, R., Rivkin, R. B., Sarmiento, J., Schoemann, V., Smetacek, V., Takeda, S., Tsuda, A., Turner, S., and Watson, A. J.: Mesoscale Iron Enrichment Experiments 1993-2005: Synthesis and Future Directions, Science, 315, 612-617, 2007.

Bozec, Y., Bakker, D. C. E., Hartmann, C., Thomas, H., Bellerby, R. G. J., Nightingale, P. D., Riebesell, U., Watson, A. J., and de Baar, H. J. W.: The CO_2 system in a Redfield context during an iron enrichment experiment in the Southern Ocean, Mar. Chem., 95, 89-105, 2005.

Brand, L.E.: Minimum iron requirements in marine phytoplankton and the implications for the biogeochemical control of new production, Limnol. Oceanogr., 36, 1756-1772, 1991.

Briggs, N., Perry, M. J., Cetinić, I., Lee, C., D'Asaro, E., Gray, A. M., and Rehm, E.: High-resolution observations of aggregate flux during a sub-polar North Atlantic spring bloom, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. I, 58, 1031-1039, 2011.

Broecker, W. S.: Ocean chemistry during glacial time, Geochim. Cosmochim. Acta, 46, 1689-1705, 1982.

Broecker, W. S. and Henderson, G. M.: The sequence of events surrounding Termination II and their implications for the cause of glacial-interglacial CO_2 changes, Paleoceanography, 13, 352-364, 1998.

Buesseler, K. O.: Do upper-ocean sediment traps provide an accurate record of particle flux?, Nature, 353, 420-423, 1991.

Buesseler, K. O.: The decoupling of production and particulate export in the surface ocean, Global Biogeochem. Cycles, 12, 297-310, 1998.

Buesseler, K. O., Steinberg, D. K., Michaels, A. F., Johnson, R. J., Andrews, J. E., Valdes, J. R., and Price, J. F.: A comparison of the quantity and quality of material caught in a neutrally buoyant versus surface-tethered sediment trap, Deep-Sea Res. Part. I, 47, 277-294, 2000.

Buesseler, K. O. and Boyd, P. W.: Will Ocean Fertilization Work?, Science, 300, 67-68, 2003.

Buesseler, K. O., Andrews, J. E., Pike, S. M., and Charette, M. A.: The Effects of Iron Fertilization on Carbon Sequestration in the Southern Ocean, Science, 304, 414-417, 2004.

Buesseler, K. O., Andrews, J. E., Pike, S. M., Charette, M. A., Goldson, L. E., Brzezinski, M. A., Lance, V. P.: Particle export during the Southern Ocean Iron Experiment (SOFeX), Limnol. Oceanogr., 1, 311-327, 2005.

Buesseler, K. O., Benitez-Nelson, C. R., Moran, S. B., Burd, A., Charette, M., Cochran, J. K., Coppola, L., Fisher, N. S., Fowler, S. W., Gardner, W. D., Guo, L. D., Gustafsson, Ö., Lamborg, C., Masque, P., Miquel, J. C., Passow, U., Santschi,

P. H., Savoye, N., Stewart, G., and Trull, T.: An assessment of particulate organic carbon to thorium-234 ratios in the ocean and their impact on the application of 234Th as a POC flux proxy, Mar. Chem., 100, 213-233, 2006.

Buesseler, K. O.-, Antia, A. N.-, Chen, M.-, Fowler, S. W.-, Gardner, W. D.-, Gustafsson, Ö.-, Harada, K.-, Michaels, A. F.-, Rutgers v. d. Loeff, M.–, Sarin, M.–, Steinberg, D. K. and Trull, T.: An assessment of the use of sediment traps for estimating upper ocean particle fluxes, J. Mar. Res., 65(3), 345-416, 2007.

Butler, W. L.: Energy Distribution in the Photochemical Apparatus of Photosynthesis, Annual Review of Plant Physiology, 29, 345-378, 1978.

Cavagna, A. J., Fripiat, F., Dehairs, F., Wolf-Gladrow, D., Cisewski, B., Savoye, N., Andrè, L., and Cardinal, D.: Silicon uptake and supply during a Southern Ocean iron fertilization experiment (EIFEX) tracked by Si isotopes, Limnol. Oceanogr., 56, 147-160, 2011.

Cavender-Bares, K. K., Mann, E. L., Chisholm, S. W., Ondrusek, M. E., and Bidigare, R. R.: Differential response of equatorial Pacific phytoplankton to iron fertilization, Limnol. Oceanogr., 44, 237-246, 1999.

Charette, M. A. and Buesseler, K. O.: Does iron fertilization lead to rapid carbon export in the Southern Ocean?, Geochem. Geophys. Geosyst., 1, 2000GC000069, 2000.

Charlson, R. J., Lovelock, J. E., Andreae, M. O., and Warren, S. G.: Oceanic phytoplankton, atmospheric sulphur, cloud albedo and climate, Nature, 326, 655-661, 1987.

Chisholm, S. W., Falkowski, P. G., and Cullen, J. J.: Dis-Crediting Ocean Fertilization, Science, 294, 309-310, 2001.

Cisewski, B., Strass, V. H., Losch, M., and Prandke, H.: Mixed layer analysis of a mesoscale eddy in the Antarctic Polar Front Zone, J. Geophys. Res., 113, C05017, 2008.

Coale, K.H., Bruland, K.W.: ^{234}Th: ^{238}U disequilibria within the California Current. Limn. Oceano., 30 (1), 22–33, 1985.

Coale, K. H., Johnson, K. S., Fitzwater, S. E., Gordon, R. M., Tanner, S., Chavez, F. P., Ferioli, L., Sakamoto, C., Rogers, P., Millero, F., Steinberg, P., Nightingale, P., Cooper, D., Cochlan, W. P., Landry, M. R., Constantinou, J., Rollwagen, G., Trasvina, A., and Kudela, R.: A massive phytoplankton bloom induced by an ecosystem-scale iron fertilization experiment in the equatorial Pacific Ocean, Nature, 383, 495-501, 1996.

Coale, K. H., Johnson, K. S., Fitzwater, S. E., Blain, S. P. G., Stanton, T. P., and Coley, T. L.: IronEx-I, an *in situ* iron-enrichment experiment: Experimental design, implementation and results, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 45, 919-945, 1998.

Coale, K. H., Johnson, K. S., Chavez, F. P., Buesseler, K. O., Barber, R. T., Brzezinski, M. A., Cochlan, W. P., Millero, F. J., Falkowski, P. G., Bauer, J. E., Wanninkhof, R. H., Kudela, R. M., Altabet, M. A., Hales, B. E., Takahashi, T., Landry, M. R., Bidigare, R. R., Wang, X., Chase, Z., Strutton, P. G., Friederich, G. E., Gorbunov, M. Y., Lance, V. P., Hilting, A. K., Hiscock, M. R., Demarest, M., Hiscock, W. T., Sullivan, K. F., Tanner, S. J., Gordon, R. M., Hunter, C. N., Elrod, V. A., Fitzwater, S. E., Jones, J. L., Tozzi, S., Koblizek, M., Roberts, A. E., Herndon, J., Brewster, J., Ladizinsky, N., Smith, G., Cooper, D., Timothy, D., Brown, S. L., Selph, K. E., Sheridan, C. C., Twining, B. S., and Johnson, Z. I.: Southern Ocean Iron Enrichment Experiment: Carbon Cycling in High- and Low-Si Waters, Science, 304, 408-414, 2004.

Cochlan, W. P.: The heterotrophic bacterial response during a mesoscale iron enrichment experiment (IronEx II) in the eastern Equatorial Pacific Ocean. Limnol. Oceanogr., 46, 428–435, 2001.

Cooper, D. J., Watson, A. J., and Nightingale, P. D.: Large decrease in ocean-surface CO_2 fugacity in response to *in situ* iron fertilization, Nature, 383, 511-513, 1996.

Croot, P. L., Bluhm, K., Schlosser, C., Streu, P., Breitbarth, E., Frew, R., and Van Ardelan, M.: Regeneration of Fe(II) during EIFeX and SOFeX, Geophys. Res. Lett., 35, L19606, 2008.

Cullen, J. J.: Status of the iron hypothesis after the Open-Ocean Enrichment Experiment, Limnol. Oceanogr., 40, 1336-1343, 1995.

Currie, K. I., Macaskill, B., Reid, M. R., and Law, C. S.: Processes governing the carbon chemistry during the SAGE

experiment, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 58, 851-860, 2011.

Dacey, J. W. H.; Wakeham, S. G. Oceanic dimethylsulfide: production during zooplankton grazing on phytoplankton, Science, 233, 1314–1316, DOI:10.1126/science.233.4770.1314, 1986.

Dall'Olmo, G. and Mork, K. A.: Carbon export by small particles in the Norwegian Sea, Geophys. Res. Lett., 41, 2921-2927, 2014.

de Baar, H. J. W., de Jong, J. T. M., Bakker, D.C.E., Löscher, B.M., Veth, C., Bathmann, U., and Smetacek, V.: Importance of iron for plankton blooms and carbon dioxide drawdown in the Southern Ocean, Nature, 373, 412–415, 1995.

de Baar, H. J. W., Boyd, P. W., Coale, K. H., Landry, M. R., Tsuda, A., Assmy, P., Bakker, D. C. E., Bozec, Y., Barber, R. T., Brzezinski, M. A., Buesseler, K. O., Boyé, M., Croot, P. L., Gervais, F., Gorbunov, M. Y., Harrison, P. J., Hiscock, W. T., Laan, P., Lancelot, C., Law, C. S., Levasseur, M., Marchetti, A., Millero, F. J., Nishioka, J., Nojiri, Y., van Oijen, T., Riebesell, U., Rijkenberg, M. J. A., Saito, H., Takeda, S., Timmermans, K. R., Veldhuis, M. J. W., Waite, A. M., and Wong, C.-S.: Synthesis of iron fertilization experiments: From the Iron Age in the Age of Enlightenment, J. Geophys. Res., 110, C09S16, 2005.

De La Rocha, C. L.: The Biological Pump, in: Treatise on Geochemistry update, edited by: Holland, H. D. and Turekian, K. K., Elsevier Pergamon, Oxford, 1-29, 2007.

Denman, K. L.: Climate change, ocean processes and ocean iron fertilization, Mar. Ecol.-Prog. Ser., 364, 219–225, 2008.

Ditullio, G.R., Hutchins, D.A., and Bruland, K.W.: Interaction of iron and major nutrients controls phytoplankton growth and species composition in the tropical North Pacific Ocean, Limnol. Oceanogr., 38, 495-508, 1993.

Duce, R. A. and Tindale, N. W.: Atmospheric transport of iron and its deposition in the ocean, Limnol. Oceanogr., 36, 1715-1726, 1991.

Dunne, J. P., Devol, A. H., and Emerson, S.: The Oceanic Remote Chemical/Optical Analyzer (ORCA)—An Autonomous Moored Profiler, J. Atmos. Oceanic Technol., 19, 1709-1721, 2002.

Ebersbach, F., Assmy, P., Martin, P., Schulz, I., Wolzenburg, S., and Nöthig, E.-M.: Particle flux characterisation and sedimentation patterns of protistan plankton during the iron fertilisation experiment LOHAFEX in the Southern Ocean, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. I, 89, 94-103, 2014.

Faghmous, J. H., Frenger, I., Yao, Y., Warmka, R., Lindell, A., and Kumar, V.: A daily global mesoscale ocean eddy dataset from satellite altimetry, Sci. Data, 2, 150028, 2015.

Farías, L., Florez-Leiva, L., Besoain, V., Sarthou, G., and Fernández, C.: Dissolved greenhouse gases (nitrous oxide and methane) associated with the naturally iron-fertilized Kerguelen region (KEOPS 2 cruise) in the Southern Ocean, Biogeosciences, 12, 1925-1940, https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-12-1925-2015, 2015.

Falkowski, P. G.: Evolution of the nitrogen cycle and its influence on the biological sequestration of CO_2 in the ocean, Nature, 387, 272-275, 1997.

Figueiras, F. G., Arbones, B., Estrada, M.: Implications of bio-optical modeling of phytoplankton photosynthesis in Antarctic waters: Further evidence of no light limitation in the Bransfield Strait, Limnol. Oceanogr., 7, 1599-1608, doi: 10.4319/lo.1999.44.7.1599, 1999.

Fine, R. A.: Observations of CFCs and SF6 as Ocean Tracers, Annu. Rev. Mar. Sci., 3, 173-195, 2011.

~~Fine, R. A.: Observations of CFCs and SF6 as Ocean Tracers, Annual Review of Marine Science, 3, 173–195, 2010.~~

Fitzwater, S. E., Coale, K. H., Gordon, R. M., Johnson, K. S., and Ondrusek, M. E.: Iron deficiency and phytoplankton growth in the equatorial Pacific, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 43, 995-1015, 1996.

Forster, P., Ramaswamy, V., Artaxo, P., Berntsen, T., Betts, R., Fahey, D. W., Haywood, J., Lean, J., Lowe, D. C., Myhre, G., Nganga, J., Prinn, R., Raga, G., Schultz, M., and Van Dorland, R.: Changes in atmospheric constituents and in radiative forcing. Cambridge, United Kingdom, Cambridge University Press, 129-234, 2007.

Freestone, D., and Rayfuse, R. G.: Iron Ocean Fertilization and International Law, Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser., 364, 227-233, 2008.

Frew, R. D., Bowie, A. R., Croot, P. L., and Pickmere S.: Macronutrient and trace-metal geochemistry of an *in situ* iron-induced Southern Ocean bloom, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 48, 2467-2481, 2001.

Frost, B. W.: Phytoplankton bloom on iron rations, Nature, 383, 475-476, 1996.

Fuhrman, J. A. and Capone, D. G.: Possible biogeochemical consequences of ocean fertilization, Limnol. Oceanogr., 36, 1951-1959, 1991.

Gall, M. P., Strzepek, R., Maldonado, M., and Boyd, P. W.: Phytoplankton processes. Part 2: Rates of primary production and factors controlling algal growth during the Southern Ocean Iron RElease Experiment (SOIREE), Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 48, 2571-2590, 2001a.

Gall, M.P., Boyd, P.W., Hall, J., Safi, K.A., and Chang, H.: Phytoplankton processes. Part 1: community structure during the Southern Ocean iron release experiment (SOIREE), Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 48, 2551–2570, 2001b.

Gardner, W. D., Hinga, K. R., and Marra, J.: Observations on the degradation of biogenic material in the deep ocean with implications on the accuracy of sediment trap fluxes, J. Mar. Res., *41*, 195-214, 1983.

Gerringa, L. J. A., Alderkamp, A.-C., Laan, P., Thuróczy, C.-E., De Baar, H. J. W., Mills, M. M., van Dijken, G. L., Haren, H. V., and Arrigo, K. R.: Iron from melting glaciers fuels the phytoplankton blooms in Amundsen Sea (Southern Ocean): Iron biogeochemistry, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 71-76, 16-31, 2012.

Gervais, F., Riebesell, U., and Gorbunov, M. Y.: Changes in primary productivity and chlorophyll *a* in response to iron fertilization in the Southern Polar Frontal Zone, Limnol. Oceanogr., 47, 1324-1335, 2002.

Gnanadesikan, A., Sarmiento, J. L., and Slater, R. D.: Effects of patchy ocean fertilization on atmospheric carbon dioxide and biological production, Global Biogeochem. Cy., 17, 1050,doi:10.1029/2002GB001940, 2003.

Gordon, R. M., Johnson, K. S., and Coale, K. H.: The behaviour of iron and other trace elements during the IronEx-I and PlumEx experiments in the Equatorial Pacific, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 45, 995-1041, 1998.

Grelowski, A., Majewicz, A., Pastuszak, M.: Mesoscale hydrodynamic processes in the region of Bransfield Strait and the southern part of Drake Passage during BIOMASS-SIBEX 1983/84, Pol. Polar Res., 7:353–369, 1986.

Hadfield, M. G.: Expected and observed conditions during the SAGE iron addition experiment in Subantarctic waters, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 58, 764-775, 2011.

Hall, J. A. and Safi, K.: The impact of in situ Fe fertilisation on the microbial food web in the Southern Ocean, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 48, 2591-2613, 2001.

Harvey, M. J., Law, C. S., Smith, M. J., Hall, J. A., Abraham, E. R., Stevens, C. L., Hadfield, M. G., Ho, D. T., Ward, B., Archer, S. D., Cainey, J. M., Currie, K. I., Devries, D., Ellwood, M. J., Hill, P., Jones, G. B., Katz, D., Kuparinen, J., Macaskill, B., Main, W., Marriner, A., McGregor, J., McNeil, C., Minnett, P. J., Nodder, S. D., Peloquin, J., Pickmere, S., Pinkerton, M. H., Safi, K. A., Thompson, R., Walkington, M., Wright, S. W., and Ziolkowski, L. A.: The SOLAS air–sea gas exchange experiment (SAGE) 2004, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 58, 753-763, 2010.

Hauck, J., Köhler, P., Wolf-Gladrow, D., and Völker, C.: Iron fertilisation and century-scale effects of open ocean dissolution of olivine in a simulated CO_2 removal experiment, Environ. Res. Lett.~~Environmental Research Letters~~, 11, 024007, 2016.

Helbling, E. W., Villafañe, V. E., and Holm-Hansen, O.: Variability of phytoplankton distribution and primary production around Elephant Island, Antarctica, during 1990–1993, Polar Biol.~~ogy~~, 15, 233-246, 1995.

Hiscock, W. T. and Millero, F. J.: Nutrient and carbon parameters during the Southern Ocean iron experiment (SOFeX), Deep-Sea Res. Pt. I, 52, 2086-2108, 2005.

Hoffmann, L. J., Peeken, I., Lochte, K., Assmy, P., and Veldhuis, M.: Different reactions of Southern Ocean phytoplankton size classes to iron fertilization, Limnol. Oceanogr., 51, 1217-1229, 2006.

Hudson, J.M. and Morel, F.M.M.: Iron transport in marine phytoplankton: kinetics and cellular and medium coordination reactions, Limnol. Oceanogr., 35, 1002-1020, 1990.

Hunt, B. P. V. and Hosie, G. W.: The seasonal succession of zooplankton in the Southern Ocean south of Australia, part II: The Sub-Antarctic to Polar Frontal Zones, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. I, 53, 1203-1223, 2006.

Hutchins, D.A., Ditullio, G.R., and Bruland, K.W.: Iron and regenerated production: Evidence for biological iron recycling in two marine environments, Limnol. Oceanogr., 38, 1242-1255, 1993.

IPCC: Climate Change: The IPCC Scientific Assessment of Climate Change (Eds. J. T. Houghton, G. J. Jenkins, and J. J. Ephraums), Cambridge Univ. Press, Cambridge, 1990.

IPCC: Climate Change 1992: The Supplementary Report to the IPCC Scientific Assessment (Eds. J. T. Houghton, B. A. Callander, and S. K. Varney), Cambridge Univ. Press, 1992.

IPCC: Climate Change 1995: The Science of Climate Change, Contribution of Working Group 1 to the Second Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (Eds. J. T. Houghton, L. G. Meira Filho, B. A. Callander, N. Harris, A. Kattenberg, and K. Maskell), Cambridge Univ. Press, Cambridge, 1995.

IPCC: Emissions scenarios: special report of Working Group III of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (Eds. N. Nakicenovic, R. Swart), Cambridge Univ. Press, Cambridge, 2000.

IPCC: Climate Change 2001: The Scientific Basis, Contribution of Working Group 1 to the Third Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (Eds. D. J. Griggs, M. Noguer, P. J. van der Linden, X. Dai, K. Maskell, and C. A. Johnson), Cambridge Univ. Press, Cambridge, 2001.

IPCC: Climate Change 2007: Mitigation of Climate Change, Contribution of Working Group III to the Fourth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (Eds. B. Metz, O.R. Davidson, P.R. Bosch, R. Dave, L.A. Meyer), Cambridge Univ. Press, Cambridge, 2007.

~~IPCC: Climate Change 2007: The Physical Science Basis, Contribution of Working Group I to the Fourth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (Eds. S. Solomon, D. Qin, M. Manning, Z. Chen, M. Marquis, K. B. Averyt, M. Tignor, and H. L. Miller), Cambridge Univ. Press, Cambridge, 2007.~~

IPCC: Climate Change 2013: The Physical Science Basis, Contribution of Working Group I to the Fifth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (Eds. T. F. Stocker, D. Qin, G.-K. Plattner, M. Tignor, S. K. Allen, J. Boschung, A. Nauels, Y. Xia, V. Bex, and P. M. Midgley), Cambridge Univ. Press, Cambridge, 2013.

IPCC: Climate Change 2014: Mitigation of Climate Change, Contribution of Working Group III to the Fifth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (Eds. O. Edenhofer, R. Pichs-Madruga, Y. Sokona, E. Farahani, S. Kadner, K. Seyboth, A. Adler, I. Baum, S. Brunner, P. Eickemeier, B. Kriemann, J. Savolainen, S. Schlömer, C. von Stechow, T. Zwickel, and J. C. Minx), Cambridge Univ. Press, Cambridge, 2014.

Jacquet, S. H. M., Savoye, N., Dehairs, F., Strass, V. H., and Cardinal, D.: Mesopelagic carbon remineralization during the European Iron Fertilization Experiment, Global Biogeochem. Cycles, 22, GB1023, 2008.

Jin, X. and Gruber, N.: Offsetting the radiative benefit of ocean iron fertilization by enhancing N_2O emissions, Geophys. Res. Lett., 30, 2249, 2003.

Jin, X., Gruber, N., Frenzel, H., Doney, S. C., and McWilliams, J. C.: The impact on atmospheric CO_2 of iron fertilization induced changes in the ocean's biological pump, Biogeosciences, 5, 385–406, doi:10.5194/bg-5-385-2008, 2008.

Johnson, K. S. and Karl, D. M.: Is Ocean Fertilization Credible and Creditable?, Science, 296, 467-468, 2002.

Joos, F., Sarmiento, J. L., and Siegenthaler, U.: Estimates of the effect of Southern Ocean iron fertilization on atmospheric CO_2 concentrations, Nature, 349, 772-775, 1991.

Kähler, P., and Bauerfeind, E.: Organic particles in a shallow sediment trap, Substantial loss to the dissolved phase, Limnol. Oceanogr., 46, 719-723, 2001.

Kahru, M., Mitchell, B. G., Gille, S. T., Hewes, C. D., and Holm-Hansen, O.: Eddies enhance biological production in the Weddell-Scotia Confluence of the Southern Ocean, Geophys. Res. Lett., 34, L14603, 2007.

Kang, J.-S., Kang, S.-H., Kim, D., and Kim, D.-Y.: Planktonic centric diatom Minidiscus chilensis dominated sediment trap material in eastern Bransfield Strait, Antarctica, Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser., 255, 93–99, 2003.

Kang, S. H., Kang, J. S., Lee S., Chung, K. H., Kim, D., Park, M. G., Antarctic phytoplankton assemblages in the marginal ice zone of the northwestern Weddell Sea, J. Plankton Res., 23, 333–352, 2001.

Karl, D. M. and Knauer, G. A.: Swimmers, a recapitulation of the problem and a potential solution. Oceanography, *2*, 32-35, 1989.

Keller, D. P., Feng, E. Y., and Oschlies, A.: Potential climate engineering effectiveness and side effects during a high carbon dioxide-emission scenario, Nat. Commun., 5, 3304, 2014.

Khim, B.-K., Kim, D. S., Shin, H. C., and Kim, D. Y.: Stable Carbon and Nitrogen Isotopes of Sinking Particles in the Eastern Bransfield Strait (Antarctica), Ocean Sci. J., 40, 167-176, 2005.

Knauer, G. A., Karl, D. M., Martin, J. H., and Hunter, C. N.: *In situ* effects of selected preservatives on total carbon, nitrogen and metals collected in sediment traps, J. Mar. Res., 42, 445-462, 1984.

Kolber, Z. S., Barber, R. T., Coale, K. H., Fitzwateri, S. E., Greene, R. M., Johnson, K. S., Lindley, S., and Falkowski, P. G.: Iron limitation of phytoplankton photosynthesis in the equatorial Pacific Ocean, Nature, 371, 145-149, 1994.

Kudo, I., Noiri, Y., Cochlan, W. P., Suzuki, K., Aramaki, T., Ono, T., and Nojiri, Y.: Primary productivity, bacterial productivity and nitrogen uptake in response to iron enrichment during the SEEDS II, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 56, 2755-2766, 2009.

Kurz, K. D. and~~,~~ Maier-Reimer, E.: Iron fertilization of the austral ocean—the Hamburg model assessment, Global Biogeochem. Cycles, 7, 229–244, 1993.

Lampitt, R. S., Achterberg, E. P., Anderson, T. R., Hughes, J. A., Iglesias-Rodriguez, M. D., Kelly-Gerreyn, B. A., Lucas, M., Popova, E. E., Sanders, R., Shepherd, J. G., Smythe-Wright, D., and Yool, A.: Ocean fertilization: a potential means of geoengineering?, Phil. Trans. R. Soc. A, 366, 3919-3945, 2008.

Landry, M. R., Ondrusek, M. E., Tanner, S. J., Brown, S. L., Constantinou, J., Bidigare, R. R., Coale, K. H., and Fitzwater, S.: Biological response to iron fertilization in the eastern equatorial Pacific (IronEx II). I. Microplankton community abundances and biomass, Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser., 201, 27-42, 2000.

~~Landry, M. R., Constantinou, J., Latasa, M., Brown, S. L., Bidigare, R. R., and Ondrusek, M. E.: Biological response to iron fertilization in the eastern equatorial Pacific (IronEx II). III. Dynamics of phytoplankton growth and microzooplankton grazing, Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser., 201, 57-72, 2000.~~

Latasa, M., Henjes, J., Scharek, R., Assmy, P., Röttgers, R., and Smetacek, V.: Progressive decoupling between phytoplankton growth and microzooplankton grazing during an iron-induced phytoplankton bloom in the Southern Ocean (EIFEX), Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser., 513, 39-50, 2014.

Law, C. S., Watson, A. J., Liddicoat, M. I., and Stanton, T.: Sulphur hexafluoride as a tracer of biogeochemical and physical processes in an open-ocean iron fertilisation experiment, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 45, 977-994, 1998.

Law, C. S. and Ling, R. D.: Nitrous oxide flux and response to increased iron availability in the Antarctic Circumpolar Current, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 48, 2509-2527, 2001.

Law, C. S., Abraham, E. R., Watson, A. J., and Liddicoat, M. I.: Vertical eddy diffusion and nutrient supply to the surface mixed layer of the Antarctic Circumpolar Current, J. Geophys. Res., 108, 3272, 2003.

Law, C. S., Crawford, W. R., Smith, M. J., Boyd, P. W., Wong, C. S., Nojiri, Y., Robert, M., Abraham, E. R., Johnson, W. K., Forsland, V., and Arychuk, M.: Patch evolution and the biogeochemical impact of entrainment during an iron fertilisation experiment in the sub-Arctic Pacific, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 53, 2012-2033, 2006.

Law, C. S.: Predicting and monitoring the effects of large-scale ocean iron fertilization on marine trace gas emissions, Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser., 364, 283-288, 2008.

Law, C. S., Smith, M. J., Stevens, C. L., Abraham, E. R., Ellwood, M. J., Hill, P., Nodder, S., Peloquin, J., Pickmere, S., Safi, K., and Walkington, C. M.: Did dilution limit the phytoplankton response to iron addition in HNLCLSi sub-Antarctic waters during the SAGE experiment?, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 58, 786-799, 2011.

Lawrence, M. G.: Side Effects of Oceanic Iron Fertilization, Science, 297, 1993, 2002.

Lenton, T. M. and Vaughan, N. E.: The radiative forcing potential of different climate geoengineering options, Atmos. Chem. Phys., 9, 5539-5561, 2009.

Leung, D. Y. C., Caramanna, G., and Maroto-Valer, M. M.: An overview of current status of carbon dioxide capture and storage technologies, Renew. Sust. Energ. Rev., 39, 426-443, 2014.

~~Le Quéré, C., Buitenhuis, E. T., Moriarty, R., Alvain, S., Aumont, O., Bopp, L., Chollet, S., Enright, C., Franklin, D. J., Geider, R. J., Harrison, S. P., Hirst, A. G., Larsen, S., Legendre, L., Platt, T., Prentice, I. C., Rivkin, R. B., Sailley, S., Sathyendranath, S., Stephens, N., Vogt, M., and Vallina, S. M.: Role of zooplankton dynamics for Southern Ocean phytoplankton biomass and global biogeochemical cycles, Biogeosciences, 13, 4111-4133, 2016.~~

Levasseur, M., Scarratt, M. G., Michaud, S., Merzouk, A., Wong, C. S., Arychuk, M., Richardson, W., Rivkin, R. B., Hale, M., Wong, E., Marchetti, A., and Kiyosawa, H.: DMSP and DMS dynamics during a mesoscale iron fertilization experiment in the Northeast Pacific—Part I: Temporal and vertical distributions, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 53, 2353-2369, 2006.

Liss, P., Chuck, A., Bakker, D., and Turner, S.: Ocean fertilization with iron: effects on climate and air quality, Tellus B, 57, 269-271, 2005.

London Convention: Convention on the Prevention of Marine Pollution by Dumping of Wastes and Other Matter 1972, 1972.

London Protocol: 1996 Protocol to the Convention on the Prevention of Marine Pollution by Dumping of Wastes and Other Matter, 1972, 1996.

Marchetti, A., Sherry, N. D., Kiyosawa, H., Tsuda, A., and Harrison, P. J.: Phytoplankton processes during a mesoscale iron enrichment in the NE subarctic Pacific: Part I—Biomass and assemblage, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 53, 2095-2113, 2006.

Marchetti, A., Lundholm, N., Kotaki, Y., Hubbard, K., Harrison, P. J., and Virginia Armbrust, E.: Identification and assessment of domoic acid production in oceanic Pseudo-nitzschia (Bacillariophyceae) from iron-limited waters in the Northeast Subarctic Pacific, Journal of Phycology, J. Phycol., 650-661, 2008.

Marshall, J. and Speer, K.: Closure of the meridional overturning circulation through Southern Ocean upwelling, Nat. Geosci., 5, 171-180, 2012.

Martin, J. H. and Fitzwater, S. E.: Iron deficiency limits phytoplankton growth in the north-east Pacific subarctic, Nature, 331, 341-343, 1988.

Martin, J. H.: Glacial-interglacial CO_2 change: The Iron Hypothesis, Paleoceanography, 5, 1-13, 1990.

Martin, J. H. and Chisholm, P.: Design for a mesoscale iron enrichment experiment. Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution, U.S JGOFS Planning Report, 15, 1992.

Martin, J. H., Coale, K. H., Johnson, K. S., Fitzwater, S. E., Gordon, R. M., Tanner, S. J., Hunter, C. N., Elrod, V. A., Nowicki, J. L., Coley, T. L., Barber, R. T., Lindley, S., Watson, A. J., Van Scoy, K., Law, C. S., Liddicoat, M. I., Ling, R., Stanton, T., Stockel, J., Collins, C., Anderson, A., Bidigare, R., Ondrusek, M., Latasa, M., Millero, F. J., Lee, K., Yao, W., Zhang, J. Z., Friederich, G., Sakamoto, C., Chavez, F., Buck, K., Kolber, Z., Greene, R., Falkowski, P., Chisholm, S. W., Hoge, F., Swift, R., Yungel, J., Turner, S., Nightingale, P., Hatton, A., Liss, P., and Tindale, N. W.: Testing the iron hypothesis in ecosystems of the equatorial Pacific Ocean, Nature, 371, 123-129, 1994.

Martin, P., van der Loeff, M. R., Cassar, N., Vandromme, P., d'Ovidio, F., Stemmann, L., Rengarajan, R., Soares, M.,

González, H. E., Ebersbach, F., Lampitt, R. S., Sanders, R., Barnett, B. A., Smetacek, V., and Naqvi, S. W. A.: Iron fertilization enhanced net community production but not downward particle flux during the Southern Ocean iron fertilization experiment LOHAFEX, Global Biogeochem. Cycles, 27, 871-881, 2013.

Matthews, B.: Climate engineering: a critical review of proposals, their scientific and political context, and possible impacts, Compiled for scientists for global responsibility, 1996. (http://records.viu.ca/earles/geol312o/assignments/mitigation.htm, 1996).

McElroy, M. B.: Marine biological controls on atmospheric CO_2 and climate, Nature, 302, 328-329, 1983.

Meinshausen, M., Smith, S. J., Calvin, K., Daniel, J. S., Kainuma, M. L. T., Lamarque, J.-F., Matsumoto, K., Montzka, S. A., Raper, S. C. B., Riahi, K., Thomson, A., Velders, G. J. M., and van Vuuren, D. P. P.: The RCP greenhouse gas concentrations and their extensions from 1765 to 2300, Clim. Change, 109, 213, 2011.

Mengelt, C., Abbott, M. R., Barth, J. A., Letelier, R. M., Measures, C. I., and Vink, S.: Phytoplankton pigment distribution in relation to silicic acid, iron and the physical structure across the Antarctic Polar Front, 170°W, during austral summer, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 48, 4081-4100, 2001.

Michaels, A. F. and Silver, M. W.: Primary production, sinking fluxes and the microbial food web, Deep Sea Res. Pt. I, 35, 473–490, doi:10.1016/0198-0149(88)90126-4, 1988.

Mills, M. M., Ridame, C., Davey, M., La Roche, J., and Geider, R. J.: Iron and phosphorus co-limit nitrogen fixation in the eastern tropical North Atlantic, Nature, 429, 292, 2004.

Ming, T., de Richter, R., Liu, W., and Caillol, S.: Fighting global warming by climate engineering: Is the Earth radiation management and the solar radiation management any option for fighting climate change?, Renew. Sust. Energ. Rev., 31, 792-834, 2014.

Mitchell, B. G., Brody, E. A., Holm-Hansen, O., McClain, C., and Bishop, J.: Light limitation of phytoplankton biomass and macronutrient utilization in the Southern Ocean, Limnol. Oceanogr., 36, 1662-1677, 1991.

Moore, J. K. and Abbott, M. R.: Surface chlorophyll concentrations in relation to the Antarctic Polar Front: seasonal and spatial patterns from satellite observations, Journal of Marine Systems, 37, 69-86, 2002.

Morel, F. M. M. and Price, N. M.: The Biogeochemical Cycles of Trace Metals in the Oceans, Science, 300, 944-947, 2003.

Morris, P. J. and Charette, M. A.: A synthesis of upper ocean carbon and dissolved iron budgets for Southern Ocean natural iron fertilisation studies, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 90, 147-157, 2013.

Morrow, R. and Le Traon, P.-Y.: Recent advances in observing mesoscale ocean dynamics with satellite altimetry, Adv. Space Res., 50, 1062-1076, 2012.

Nagao, I., Hashimoto, S., Suzuki, K., Toda, S., Narita, Y., Tsuda, A., Saito, H., Kudo, I., Kato, S., Kajii, Y., and Uematsu, M.: Responses of DMS in the seawater and atmosphere to iron enrichment in the subarctic western North Pacific (SEEDS-II), Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 56, 2899-2917, 2009.

Neftel, A., Oeschger, H., Schwander, J., Stauffer, B., and Zumbrunn, R.: Ice core sample measurements give atmospheric CO_2 content during the past 40,000 yr, Nature, 295, 220-223, 1982.

Nelson, D. M., Brzezinski, M. A., Sigmon, D. E., and Franck, V. M.: A seasonal progression of Si limitation in the Pacific sector of the Southern Ocean, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 48, 3973-3995, 2001.

Nevison, C., Butler, J. H., and Elkins, J. W.: Global distribution of N_2O and the ΔN_2O-AOU yield in the subsurface ocean, Global Biogeochem. Cycles, 17, 1119, 2003, doi:10.1029/2003GB002068, 2003.

Nishioka, J., Takeda, S., Baar, H. J. W. D., Croot, P. L., Boye, M., Laan, P., and Timmermans, K. R.: Changes in the concentration of iron in different size fractions during an iron enrichment experiment in the open Southern Ocean, Mar. Chem., 95, 51-63, 2005.

Nodder, S. D., Charette, M. A., Waite, A. M., Trull, T. W., Boyd, P. W., Zeldis, J., and Buesseler, K. O.: Particle transformations and export flux during an *in situ* iron-stimulated algal bloom in the Southern Ocean, Geophys. Res. Lett., 28, 2409-2412, 2001.

Nodder, S. D. and Waite, A. M.: Is Southern Ocean organic carbon and biogenic silica export enhanced by iron-stimulated increases in biological production? Sediment trap results from SOIREE, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 48, 2681-2701, 2001.

Noiri, Y., Kudo, I., Kiyosawa, H., Nishioka, J., and Tsuda, A.: Influence of iron and temperature on growth, nutrient utilization ratios and phytoplankton species composition in the western subarctic Pacific Ocean during the SEEDS experiment, Prog. Oceanogr., 64, 149-166, 2005.

Oliver, J. L., Barber, R. T., Smith, W. O., and Ducklow, H. W.: The heterotrophic bacterial response during the Southern Ocean Iron Experiment (SOFeX), Limnol. Oceanogr., 49, 2129-2140, 2004.

Oschlies, A., Koeve, W., Rickels, W., and Rehdanz, K.: Side effects and accounting aspects of hypothetical large-scale Southern Ocean iron fertilization, Biogeosciences, 7, 4017-4035, 2010.

Park, J., Park, T., Yang, E. J., Kim, D., Gorbunov, M. Y., Kim, H.-C., Kang, S. H., Shin, H. C., Lee, S., and Yoo, S.: Early summer iron limitation of phytoplankton photosynthesis in the Scotia Sea as inferred from fast repetition rate fluorometry, J. Geophys. Res. Oceans, 118, 3795–3806, doi:10.1002/jgrc.20281, 2013.

Park, K.-T.; Lee, K.; Shin, K.; Yang, E. J.; Hyun, B.; Kim, J.-M.; Noh, J. H.; Kim, M.; Kong, B.; Choi, D. H.; Choi, S.-J.; Jang, P.-G.; Jeong. H. J. Direct linkage between dimethyl sulfide production and microzooplankton grazing, resulting from prey composition change under high partial pressure of carbon dioxide conditions, Environ. Sci. Technol., 48(9), 4750–4756, DOI:10.1021/es403351h, 2014.

Peloquin, J., Hall, J., Safi, K., Smith, W. O., Wright, S., and van den Enden, R.: The response of phytoplankton to iron enrichment in Sub-Antarctic HNLCLSi waters: Results from the SAGE experiment, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 58, 808-823, 2011a.

Peloquin, J., Hall, J., Safi, K., Ellwood, M., Law, C. S., Thompson, K., Kuparinen, J., Harvey, M., and Pickmere, S.: Control of the phytoplankton response during the SAGE experiment: A synthesis, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 58, 824-838, 2011b.

Peng, T.-H. and Broecker, W. S.: Factors limiting the reduction of atmospheric CO_2 by iron fertilization, Limnol. Oceanogr., 36, 1919-1927, 1991.

Petit, J. R., Jouzel, J., Raynaud, D., Barkov, N. I., Barnola, J. M., Basile, I., Bender, M., Chappellaz, J., Davis, M., Delaygue, G., Delmotte, M., Kotlyakov, V. M., Legrand, M., Lipenkov, V. Y., Lorius, C., Pepin, L., Ritz, C., Saltzman, E., and Stievenard, M.: Climate and atmospheric history of the past 420,000 years from the Vostok ice core, Antarctica, Nature, 399, 429-436, 1999.

Pollard, R. T., Salter, I., Sanders, R. J., Lucas, M. I., Moore, C. M., Mills, R. A., Statham, P. J., Allen, J. T., Baker, A. R., Bakker, D. C. E., Charette, M. A., Fielding, S., Fones, G. R., French, M., Hickman, A. E., Holland, R. J., Hughes, J. A., Jickells, T. D., Lampitt, R. S., Morris, P. J., Nedelec, F. H., Nielsdottir, M., Planquette, H., Popova, E. E., Poulton, A. J., Read, J. F., Seeyave, S., Smith, T., Stinchcombe, M., Taylor, S., Thomalla, S., Venables, H. J., Williamson, R., and Zubkov, M. V.: Southern Ocean deep-water carbon export enhanced by natural iron fertilization, Nature, 457, 577-580, 2009.

Purser, A., Thomsen, L., Barnes, C., Best, M., Chapman, R., Hofbauer, M., Menzel, M., and Wagner, H.: Temporal and spatial benthic data collection via an internet operated Deep Sea Crawler, Methods in Oceanography, 5, 1-18, 2013.

Quéguiner, B., Tréguer, P., Peeken, I., and Scharek, R.: Biogeochemical dynamics and the silicon cycle in the Atlantic sector of the Southern Ocean during austral spring 1992, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 44, 69–89, 1997.

Rees, A. P., Nightingale, P. D., Owens, N. J. P., and Team, P. F.: FeeP—An *in situ* PO_4^{3-} and Fe^{2+} addition experiment to waters of the sub-tropical north-east Atlantic, Geophys. Res. Abstr., 9, 2007.

Rembauville, M., Blain, S., Armand, L., Quéguiner, B., and Salter, I.: Export fluxes in a naturally iron-fertilized area of the Southern Ocean – Part 2: Importance of diatom resting spores and faecal pellets for export, Biogeosciences, 12, 3171-3195, https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-12-3171-2015, 2015.

Rembauville, M., Manno, C., Tarling, G. A., Blain, S., and Salter, I.: Strong contribution of diatom resting spores to deep-sea carbon transfer in naturally iron-fertilized waters downstream of South Georgia, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. I, 115, 22-35, 2016.

Resolution LC-LP.1: Regulation of Ocean Fertilization, LC 30/16, Annex 6, 2008.

Resolution LC-LP.2: Assessment Framework for Scientific Research Involving Ocean Fertilization, LC 32/15, Annex 6, 2010.

Resolution LP.4 (8): Amendment to the London Protocol to Regulate the Placement of Matter for Ocean Fertilization and Other Marine Geoengineering Activities, LP.8, LC 35/15, Annex 4, Annex 5, 2013.

Rogelj, J., Michiel, S., Malte, M., Reto, K., Joseph, A., Keywan, R., and William, H.: Zero emission targets as long-term global goals for climate protection, Environ. Res. Lett., 10, 105007, 2015.

Rollwagen Bollens, G.C. and Landry, M.R., Biological response to iron fertilization in the eastern equatorial Pacific (IronEx II). II. Mesozooplankton abundance, biomass, depth distribution and grazing, Mar. Ecol. Pro. Ser., 201, 43–56, 2000.

Salter, I., Lampitt, R. S., Sanders, R., Poulton, A., Kemp, A. E. S., Boorman, B., Saw, K., and Pearce, R.: Estimating carbon, silica and diatom export from a naturally fertilised phytoplankton bloom in the Southern Ocean using PELAGRA: A novel drifting sediment trap, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 54, 2233–2259, doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2007.06.008, 2007.

Sangrà, P., Gordo, C., Hernández-Arencibia, M., Marrero-Díaz, A., Rodríguez-Santana, A., Stegner, A., Martínez-Marrero, A., Pelegrí, J.L., and Pichon, T.: The Bransfield Current System, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. I, 58, 390–402, 2011.

Sarmiento, J. L. and Orr, J. C.: Three-dimensional simulations of the impact of Southern Ocean nutrient depletion on atmospheric CO_2 and ocean chemistry, Limnol. Oceanogr., 36, 1928-1950, 1991.

Sarmiento, J. L. and Gruber, N.: Ocean Biogeochemical Dynamics, Princeton University Press, 2006.

Sarmiento, J. L., Slater, R. D., Dunne, J., Gnanadesikan, A., and Hiscock, M. R.: Efficiency of small scale carbon mitigation by patch iron fertilization, Biogeosciences, 7, 3593-3624, https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-7-3593-2010, 2010.

Sato, M., Takeda, S., and Furuya, K.: Responses of pico- and nanophytoplankton to artificial iron infusions observed during the second iron enrichment experiment in the western subarctic Pacific (SEEDS II), Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 56, 2745-2754, 2009.

Schiermeier, Q.: The oresmen, Nature, 421, 109–110, 2003.

Schlitzer, R.: Ocean Data View, odv.awi.de, 2017.

Schnetzer, A., Miller, P. E., Schaffner, R. A., Stauffer, B. A., Jones, B. H., Weisberg, S. B., DiGiacomo, P. M., Berelson, W. M., and Caron, D. A.: Blooms of Pseudo-nitzschia and domoic acid in the San Pedro Channel and Los Angeles harbor areas of the Southern California Bight, 2003–2004, Harmful Algae, 6, 372-387, 2007.

Scholin, C. A., Gulland, F., Doucette, G. J., Benson, S., Busman, M., Chavez, F. P., Cordaro, J., DeLong, R., De Vogelaere, A., Harvey, J., Haulena, M., Lefebvre, K., Lipscomb, T., Loscutoff, S., Lowenstine, L. J., Marin Iii, R., Miller, P. E., McLellan, W. A., Moeller, P. D. R., Powell, C. L., Rowles, T., Silvagni, P., Silver, M., Spraker, T., Trainer, V., and Van Dolah, F. M.: Mortality of sea lions along the central California coast linked to a toxic diatom bloom, Nature, 403, 80, 2000.

Schultes, S., Verity, P. G., and Bathmann, U.: Copepod grazing during an iron-induced diatom bloom in the Antarctic Circumpolar Current (EisenEx): I. Feeding patterns and grazing impact on prey populations, Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology, 338, 16-34, 2006.

Sigman, D. M. and Boyle, E. A.: Glacial/interglacial variations in atmospheric carbon dioxide, Nature, 407, 859-869, 2000.

Silver, M. W., Bargu, S., Coale, S. L., Benitez-Nelson, C. R., Garcia, A. C., Roberts, K. J., Sekula-Wood, E., Bruland, K. W.,

and Coale, K. H.: Toxic diatoms and domoic acid in natural and iron enriched waters of the oceanic Pacific, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA., 107, 20762-20767, 2010.

Smetacek, V.: EisenEx: International Team Conducts Iron Experiment In Southern Ocean, U.S. JGOFS News, 11, 11–14, 2001.

Smetacek, V., Klaas, C., Menden-Deuer, S., and Rynearson, T. A.: Mesoscale distribution of dominant diatom species relative to the hydrographical field along the Antarctic Polar Front, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 49, 3835-3848, 2002.

Smetacek, V., Bathmann, U., and Helmke, E.: The expeditions Antarktis XXI/3-4-5 of the Research Vessel "Polarstern" in 2004. Reports on Polar and Marine Research 500, 2005.

Smetacek, V. and Naqvi, S. W. A.: The next generation of iron fertilization experiments in the Southern Ocean, Philos. Trans. A Math. Phys. Eng. Sci., 366, 3947-3967, 2008.

Smetacek, V. and Naqvi, S. W. A.: The expedition of the research vessel "Polarstern" to the Antarctic in 2009 (ANT-XXV/3 - LOHAFEX), Berichte zur Polar- und Meeresforschung (Reports on Polar and Marine Research). Bremerhaven, Alfred Wegener Institute for Polar and Marine Research, 613, 2010.

Smetacek, V., Klaas, C., Strass, V. H., Assmy, P., Montresor, M., Cisewski, B., Savoye, N., Webb, A., d/'Ovidio, F., Arrieta, J. M., Bathmann, U., Bellerby, R., Berg, G. M., Croot, P., Gonzalez, S., Henjes, J., Herndl, G. J., Hoffmann, L. J., Leach, H., Losch, M., Mills, M. M., Neill, C., Peeken, I., Rottgers, R., Sachs, O., Sauter, E., Schmidt, M. M., Schwarz, J., Terbruggen, A., and Wolf-Gladrow, D.: Deep carbon export from a Southern Ocean iron-fertilized diatom bloom, Nature, 487, 313-319, 2012.

Smetacek, V.: Ocean iron fertilization experiments: The dawn of a new era in applied ocean sciences?, KOPRI, Korea, 2015.

Solomon, S., Garcia, R. R., and Ravishankara, A. R.: On the role of iodine in ozone depletion, J. Geophys. Res., 99, 20491-20499, 1994.

Spolaor, A., Vallelonga, P., Cozzi, G., Gabrieli, J., Varin, C., Kehrwald, N., Zennaro, P., Boutron, C., and Barbante, C.: Iron speciation in aerosol dust influences iron bioavailability over glacial-interglacial timescales, Geophys. Res. Lett., 40, 1618-1623, 2013.

Stanton, T. P., Law, C. S., and Watson, A. J.: Physical evolution of the IronEx-I open ocean tracer patch, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 45, 947-975, 1998.

Steinberg, P. A., Millero, F. J., and Zhu, X.: Carbonate system response to iron enrichment, Mar. Chem., 62, 31-43, 1998.

Strong, A.L., Cullen, J. J., and Chisholm, S. W.: Ocean fertilization: Science, policy, and commerce, Oceanography, 22, 236–261, 2009.

Suess, E.: Particulate organic carbon flux in the oceans - Surface productivity and oxygen utilization, 1980.

Sunda, W.G., Swift, D.G., and Hunstman, S.: Low requirement for growth in oceanic phytoplankton, Nature, 351, 55-57, 1991.

Suzuki, K., Hinuma, A., Saito, H., Kiyosawa, H., Liu, H., Saino, T., and Tsuda, A.: Responses of phytoplankton and heterotrophic bacteria in the northwest subarctic Pacific to in situ iron fertilization as estimated by HPLC pigment analysis and flow cytometry, Prog. Oceanogr., 64, 167-187, 2005.

Suzuki, K., Saito, H., Isada, T., Hattori-Saito, A., Kiyosawa, H., Nishioka, J., McKay, R. M. L., Kuwata, A., and Tsuda, A.: Community structure and photosynthetic physiology of phytoplankton in the northwest subarctic Pacific during an in situ iron fertilization experiment (SEEDS-II), Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 56, 2733-2744, 2009.

Takeda, S. and Tsuda, A.: An *in situ* iron-enrichment experiment in the western subarctic Pacific (SEEDS): Introduction and summary, Prog. Oceanogr., 64, 95-109, 2005.

Thiele, S., Fuchs, B. M., Ramaiah, N., and Amann, R.: Microbial Community Response during the Iron Fertilization Experiment LOHAFEX, Appl. Environ. Microbiol., 78, 8803-8812, 2012.

Thompson, A. F., Heywood, K. J., Thorpe, S. E., Renner, A. H. H., and Trasviña, A.: Surface Circulation at the Tip of the Antarctic Peninsula from Drifters, J. Phys. Oceanogr., 39, 3-26, 2009.

Tréguer, P., Nelson, D. M., Van Bennekom, A. J., DeMaster, D. J., Leynaert, A., and Quéguiner, B.: The Silica Balance in the World Ocean: A Reestimate, Science, 268, 375-379, 1995.

Trick, C. G., Bill, B. D., Cochlan, W. P., Wells, M. L., Trainer, V. L., and Pickell, L. D.: Iron enrichment stimulates toxic diatom production in high-nitrate, low-chlorophyll areas, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA., 107, 5887-5892, 2010.

Trull, T., and Armand, L. K.: Insights into Southern Ocean carbon export from the $\delta^{13}C$ of particles and dissolved inorganic carbon during the SOIREE iron release experiment, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 48, 2655-2680, 2001.

Tsuda, A., Takeda, S., Saito, H., Nishioka, J., Nojiri, Y., Kudo, I., Kiyosawa, H., Shiomoto, A., Imai, K., Ono, T., Shimamoto, A., Tsumune, D., Yoshimura, T., Aono, T., Hinuma, A., Kinugasa, M., Suzuki, K., Sohrin, Y., Noiri, Y., Tani, H., Deguchi, Y., Tsurushima, N., Ogawa, H., Fukami, K., Kuma, K., and Saino, T.: A Mesoscale Iron Enrichment in the Western Subarctic Pacific Induces a Large Centric Diatom Bloom, Science, 300, 958-961, 2003.

Tsuda, A., Kiyosawa, H., Kuwata, A., Mochizuki, M., Shiga, N., Saito, H., Chiba, S., Imai, K., Nishioka, J., and Ono, T.: Responses of diatoms to iron-enrichment (SEEDS) in the western subarctic Pacific, temporal and spatial comparisons, Prog. Oceanogr., 64, 189-205, 2005.

Tsuda, A., Takeda, S., Saito, H., Nishioka, J., Kudo, I., Nojiri, Y., Suzuki, K., Uematsu, M., Wells, M. L., Tsumune, D., Yoshimura, T., Aono, T., Aramaki, T., Cochlan, W. P., Hayakawa, M., Imai, K., Isada, T., Iwamoto, Y., Johnson, W. K., Kameyama, S., Kato, S., Kiyosawa, H., Kondo, Y., Levasseur, M., Machida, R. J., Nagao, I., Nakagawa, F., Nakanishi, T., Nakatsuka, S., Narita, A., Noiri, Y., Obata, H., Ogawa, H., Oguma, K., Ono, T., Sakuragi, T., Sasakawa, M., Sato, M., Shimamoto, A., Takata, H., Trick, C. G., Watanabe, Y. W., Wong, C. S., and Yoshie, N.: Evidence for the grazing hypothesis: Grazing reduces phytoplankton responses of the HNLC ecosystem to iron enrichment in the western subarctic pacific (SEEDS II), J. Oceanogr., 63, 983-994, 2007.

Tsuda, A., Saito, H., Machida, R. J., and Shimode, S., Meso- and microzooplankton responses to an in situ iron fertilization experiment (SEEDS II) in the northwest subarctic Pacific, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 56(26), 2767-2778, DOI: 10.1016/j.dsr2.2009.06.004, 2009.

Tsumune, D., Nishioka, J., Shimamoto, A., Takeda, S., and Tsuda, A.: Physical behavior of the SEEDS iron-fertilized patch by sulphur hexafluoride tracer release, Prog. Oceanogr., 64, 111-127, 2005.

Tsumune, D., Nishioka, J., Shimamoto, A., Watanabe, Y. W., Aramaki, T., Nojiri, Y., Takeda, S., Tsuda, A., and Tsubono, T.: Physical behaviors of the iron-fertilized patch in SEEDS II, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 56, 2948-2957, 2009.

Turner, S. M., Nightingale, P. D., Spokes, L. J., Liddicoat, M. I., and Liss, P. S.: Increased dimethyl sulphide concentrations in sea water from *in situ* iron enrichment, Nature, 383, 513-517, 1996.

Turner, S. M., Harvey, M. J., Law, C. S., Nightingale, P. D., and Liss, P. S.: Iron-induced changes in oceanic sulfur biogeochemistry, Geophys. Res. Lett., 31, L14307, 2004.

Twining, B. S., Baines, S. B., and Fisher, N. S.: Element stoichiometries of individual plankton cells collected during the Southern Ocean Iron Experiment (SOFeX), Limnol. Oceanogr., 49, 2115-2128, 2004.

Valdes, J. R. and Price, J. F.: A neutrally buoyant, upper ocean sediment trap. J. Atmos. Oceanogr. Technol., 17, 62-68, 2000.

Valdes, J. R. and Buesseler, K. O.: The neutrally buoyant sediment trap (NBST), a new tool for "Twilight Zone" particle exploration, Eos Trans. AGU Ocean Sci. Meeting Suppl., *87(36)*, Abstract OS26A-10, 2006.

Varela, M., Fernandez, E., and Serret, P.: Size-fractionated phytoplankton biomass and primary production in the Gerlache and south Bransfield Straits (Antarctic Peninsula) in Austral summer 1995–1996, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 49, 749-768, 2002.

Vaughan, N. E. and Lenton, T. M.: A review of climate geoengineering proposals, Clim. Change, 109, 745-790, 2011.

Veth, C., Peeken, I., and Scharek, R.: Physical anatomy of fronts and surface waters in the ACC near 6°W meridian during

austral spring 1992, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II 44, 23–49, 1997.

Volk, T. and Hoffert, M. I.: Ocean Carbon Pumps: Analysis of Relative Strengths and Efficiencies in Ocean-Driven Atmospheric CO2 Changes, in: The Carbon Cycle and Atmospheric CO2: Natural Variations Archean to Present, edited, Geophys. Monogr. Ser, 99-110, 1985.

Waite, A. M. and Nodder, S. D.: The effect of in situ iron addition on the sinking rates and export flux of Southern Ocean diatoms, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 48, 2635-2654, 2001.

Walter, S., Peeken, I., Lochte, K., Webb, A., and Bange, H. W.: Nitrous oxide measurements during EIFEX, the European Iron Fertilization Experiment in the subpolar South Atlantic Ocean, Geophys. Res. Lett., 32, L23613, 2005.

~~Wanninkhof, R. and Thoning, K.: Measurement of fugacity of CO_2 in surface water using continuous and discrete sampling methods, Mar. Chem., 44, 189-204, 1993.~~

Watson, A., Liss, P., and Duce, R.: Design of a small-scale in situ iron fertilization experiment, Limnol. Oceanogr., 36, 1960-1965, 1991.

Wenzhöfer, F.–, Lemburg, J.–, Hofbauer, M.–, Lehmenhecker, S. and Färber, P.: TRAMPER - An autonomous crawler for long-term benthic oxygen flux studies in remote deep sea ecosystems, OCEANS 2016 MTS/IEEE Monterey, 1-6~~,~~ doi: 10.1109/OCEANS.2016.7761217, 2016.

Westberry, T. K., Behrenfeld, M. J., Milligan, A. J., and Doney, S. C.: Retrospective satellite ocean color analysis of purposeful and natural ocean iron fertilization, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. I, 73, 1-16, 2013.

Williamson, P., Wallace, D. W. R., Law, C. S., Boyd, P. W., Collos, Y., Croot, P., Denman, K., Riebesell, U., Takeda, S., and Vivian, C.: Ocean fertilization for geoengineering: A review of effectiveness, environmental impacts and emerging governance, Process Saf. Environ. Protect., 90, 475-488, 2012.

Wingenter, O. W., Haase, K. B., Strutton, P., Friederich, G., Meinardi, S., Blake, D. R., and Rowland, F. S.: Changing concentrations of CO, CH_4, C_5H_8, CH_3Br, CH_3I, and dimethyl sulfide during the Southern Ocean Iron Enrichment Experiments, Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci. U.S.A., 101, 8537-8541, 2004.

Wingenter, O. W., Elliot, S. M., and Blake, D. R.: New Directions: Enhancing the natural sulfur cycle to slow global warming, Atmos. Environ., 41, 7373-7375, 2007.

Wong, C. S., Timothy, D. A., Law, C. S., Nojiri, Y., Xie, L., Wong, S.-K. E., and Page, J. S.: Carbon distribution and fluxes during the SERIES iron fertilization experiment with special reference to the fugacity of carbon dioxide (fCO_2), Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 53, 2053-2074, 2006.

Xiu, P.~~,~~ and Chai, F.: Modeling the Effects of Size on Patch Dynamics of an Inert Tracer, Ocean Sci., 6(1): 413-421, 2010.

Yoo, K.-C., Yoon, H. I., Lee, J. I., Lee, M. K., and Kim, K.: Spectral analysis of time series in marine laminated sediments of the eastern Basin of Bransfield Strait (Antarctic Peninsula), 2016 SCAR Meeting, Kuala Lumpur, p984, 2016.

Zahariev, K., Christian, J. R., and Denman, K. L.: Preindustrial, historical, and fertilization simulations using a global ocean carbon model with new parameterizations of iron limitation, calcification, and N2 fixation, Prog. Oceanogr., 77, 56-82, 2008.

Zeldis, J., Mesozooplankton community composition, feeding, and export production during SOIREE, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 48, 2615–2634, 2001.

Zhuang, G., Yi, Z., Duce, R. A., and Brown, P. R.: Link between iron and sulphur cycles suggested by detection of Fe(II) in remote marine aerosols, Nature, 355, 537-539, 1992.

Zhuang, G. and Duce, R. A.: The adsorption of dissolved iron on marine aerosol particles in surface waters of the open ocean, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. I, 40, 1413-1429, 1993.

Table 1. Summary of ocean iron fertilization (OIF) experiments; time, location, research vessel, added iron(II~~I~~) (values in brackets correspond to the number of days from the first iron addition, e.g., the first iron addition becomes (0)), initial iron concentrations, target~~after~~ iron ~~addition~~ concentrations (iron concentrations after iron addition), tracer, initial patch size, experiment duration, and regional characteristics (HNLC: high-nutrient and ~~low~~ low-chlorophyll).

	Experiment	Time	Location	Research vessel	Added iron(II~~I~~) (kg) (day)	Initial iron (nM)	~~After~~ Target iron ~~addition~~ (nM)	Tracer	Patch size (km^2)	Duration (days)	Regional characteristics
1	IronEx-1	Oct 1993	Equatorial Pacific 5° S, 90° W	RV *Columbus Iselin*	①450 (0)	0.06	3.60	SF_6	64	10	HNLC
2	IronEx-2	May 1995	Equatorial Pacific 3.5° S, 104° W	RV *Melville*	①225 (0) ②112 (3) ③112 (7)	0.02	2.00 1.00 1.00	SF_6	72	17	HNLC
3	SOIREE	Feb 1999	Southern Ocean- Australasian-Pacific sector 61° S, 140° E	RV *Astrolab*	①768 (0) ②312 (3) ③312 (5) ④353 (7)	0.08	3.80 2.60 2.60 2.50	SF_6	50	13	HNLC
4	EisenEx	Nov 2000	Southern Ocean- Atlantic sector 48° S, 21° E	RV *Polarstern*	①780 (0) ②780 (7) ③780 (16)	0.06	2.00	SF_6	50	23	HNLC
5	SOFeX-N	Jan–Feb 2002	Southern Ocean- Pacific sector 56.23° S, 172° W	RV *Revelle* RV *Melville*	①631 (0) ②631 (4) ③450 (29)		1.20 1.20 1.50	SF_6	225	40	*HNLCLSi[a]
6	SOFeX-S	Jan–Feb 2002	Southern Ocean- Pacific sector 66.45° S, 171.8° W	RV *Revelle* RV *Melville* RV *Polar star*	①315 (0) ②315 (5) ③315 (8) ④315 (12)		0.70 0.70 0.70 0.70	SF_6	225	28	HNLC
7	EIFEX	Feb–Mar 2004	Southern Ocean- Atlantic sector 50° S, 2° E	RV *Polarstern*	①1410 (0) ②1410 (13)	0.08–0.20 ~~0.20~~	1.50 0.34		167	39	HNLC

To be continued

	Experiment	Time	Location	Research vessel	Added iron(II) (kg) (day)	Initial iron (nM)	Target iron addition (nM)	Tracer	Patch size (km^2)	Duration (days)	Regional characteristics
8	SAGE	Mar–Apr 2004	Southern Ocean-Southeast of New Zealand 46.5° S 172.5° E	RV *Tangaroa*	①265 (0) ②265 (6) ③265 (9) ④265 (12)	0.09	3.03 1.59 0.55 1.01	SF_6	36	15	*HNLCLSi[a]
9	LOHAFEX	Jan–Mar 2009	Southern Ocean-Atlantic sector 48° S, 15° W	RV *Polarstern*	①2000 (0) ②2000 (18)		2.00	SF_6	300	40	*HNLCLSi[a]
10	SEEDS-1	Jul–Aug 2001	Subarctic North Pacific-Western basin 48.5° N, 165° E	RV *Kaiyo-Maru*	①350 (0)	0.05	2.90	SF_6	80	13	HNLC
11	SERIES	Jul-Aug 2002	Subarctic North Pacific-Eastern basin 50.14° N, 144.75° W	RV *John P. Tully* RV *El Puma* RV *Kaiyo--Maru*	①245 (0) ②245 (6)	<0.10	>12.00 0.60	SF_6	77	25	HNLC
12	SEEDS-2	Jul–Aug 2004	Subarctic North Pacific-Western basin 48° N, 166° E	RV *Hakuho-Maru* RV *Kilo-Moana*	①332 (0) ②159 (6)	0.17	1.38	SF_6	64	26	HNLC
13	FeeP	Apr–May 2004	Subtropical North Atlantic-North-east Atlantic 27.5° N 22.5° W	RV *Charles Darwin* RV *Poseidon*	①1840 (0)	0.20–0.40	3.00	SF_6	25	21	LNLC[b]
I	Polar Front[c] CROZEX[e]	Oct–Nov 1992 Nov 2004 Jan 2005	Southern Ocean-Atlantic Sector 48° S, 6° W Southern Ocean-Crozet Plateau 44° S, 50° E	RV *Polarstern* RV *Discovery*	-		0.55				HNLC

II	PlumeEx[c]	Nov 1993	Equatorial Pacific 2° S, 89° W	RV *Columbus Iselin*		0.05	0.2				HNLC
~~II~~	~~KEOPS-1[c]~~	~~Jan–Feb 2005~~	~~Southern Ocean–Kerguelen Plateau 50° S, 73° E~~	~~RV *Marion Dufresne*~~	-	~~0.09~~	~~0.35~~	-	-		~~HNLC~~

To be continued

	Experiment	Time	Location	Research vessel	Added iron(II) (kg) (day)	Initial iron (nM)	Target iron (nM)	Tracer	Patch size (km^2)	Duration (days)	Regional characteristics
III	CROZEX[c]	Nov 2004–Jan 2005	Southern Ocean-Crozet Plateau 44° S, 50° E	RV *Discovery*			0.55				HNLC
IV	KEOPS-1[c]	Jan–Feb 2005	Southern Ocean-Kerguelen Plateau 50° S, 73° E	RV *Marion Dufresne*		0.09	0.35				HNLC
V	DynaLiFe[c]	Jan–Feb 2009	Southern Ocean-Pacific sector 74° S, 105° W	RV *Nathaniel B. Palmer*		0.2	0.4				HNLC
VI	KEOPS-2[c]	Oct–Nov 2011	Southern Ocean-Kerguelen Plateau 50.63° S, 72.08° E	RV *Marion Dufresne*							HNLC

[*a]High ~~-~~-Nutrient ~~Low~~ Low-Chlorophyll and ~~Low~~ Low ~~-~~Silicate (HNLCLSi) region.~~;~~ [b]Low~~-~~-Nutrient Low~~-~~Chlorophyll (LNLC) region. [**c]N~~n~~atural OIF experiments (PlumeEx: Natural iron enrichment experiment near Galapagos Islands; ~~CROZet natural iron bloom and EXport experiment:~~ CROZEX: CROZet natural iron bloom and EXport experiment; ~~KErguelen Ocean and Plateau compared Study 1/2:~~ KEOPS-1/2: KErguelen Ocean and Plateau compared Study-1/2; DynaLiFe: Dynamic Light on Iron Limitation program~~: DynaLiFe~~).

Sources are Martin et al. (1994); de Baar et al. (1995); Coale et al. (1996); Coale et al. (1998); Gordon et al. (1998); Boyd et al. (2000); Boyd and Law (2001); Gervais et al. (2002); Tsuda et al. (2003); Boyd et al. (2004); Coale et al. (2004); Bakker et al. (2005); Boyd et al. (2005); de Baar et al. (2005); Nishioka et al. (2005); Hoffmann et al. (2006); Law et al. (2006); Blain et al. (2007); Boyd et al. (2007); Rees et al. (2007); Tsuda et al. (2007); Pollard et al. (2009); Strong et al. (2009); Harvey et al. (2010); Gerringa et al. (2012); Smetacek et al. (2012); ~~and~~ Martin et al. (2013); and Blain et al. (2015).

Table 2. Summary of artificial ocean iron fertilization (aOIF) experiments; objectives, significant results, and limitations.

	Experiment	Objectives	Significant results	Limitations
1	IronEx-1	• To test the hypothesis that artificial iron addition will increase phytoplankton productivity by relieving the iron limitation of phytoplankton in high-nutrient low chlorophyll regions	• Small increases in the pCO_2 concentrations, Fv/Fm ratio, chlorophyll-a concentration, and primary production (PP) • Insignificant changes in nutrients ~~and pCO_2 concentrations~~	• Single iron addition • Insufficient experimental periods to observe the full phases of biogeochemical responses from the onset to termination after iron additions • Micro/macro-nutrient limitations
2	IronEx-2	• To test ~~three~~ four hypotheses that were advanced to explain the weak biogeochemical response observed during IronEx-1	• Dramatic changes in biogeochemical responses; close to support for Martin's hypothesis • Taxonomic shift toward diatom-dominated phytoplankton communities	• No export flux measurements in the deep ocean • Insufficient experimental duration
3	SOIREE	• To test the iron hypothesis in the Southern Ocean	• Diatom-dominated bloom • No measurable change in carbon export	• Insufficient experimental duration
4	EisenEx	• To test the hypothesis that atmospheric dust inputs might have led to a dramatic increase in ocean productivity during the Last Glacial Maximum due to the relief of iron-limited conditions for phytoplankton growth	• Diatom-dominated bloom • No clear differences in carbon flux between in-patch and outside-patch	• Light limitation by storms • Insufficient experimental duration
5	SOFeX-N	• To address the potential for iron and silicate interactions to regulate the diatom bloom	• Remarkable increase in diatom biomass • Observation of large export flux event with transmissometers	• Entrainment of dissolved silicate into the fertilized patch by physical mixing • No direct measurement of export fluxes with sediment traps
6	SOFeX-S	• To address the potential for iron and silicate interactions to regulate the diatom bloom	• Significantly enhanced export fluxes out of the mixed l~~L~~ayer (ML) ~~depth (MLD)~~, but similar to those for natural blooms	• Insufficient experimental duration
7	EIFEX	• To confirm that aOIF experiments can increase export production	• Observation of all the phases of the phytoplankton bloom from onset to termination • Significant carbon export to deeper layers (down to 3,000 m) due to the formation of aggregates with rapid sinking rates ~~• The occurrence of rapidly sinking large aggregates~~	

To be continued

	Experiment	Objective	Significant results	Limitations
8	SAGE	• To determine the response of phytoplankton dynamics to iron addition in high–nutrient low–chlorophyll and low silicate (HNLCLSi) regions • To test the assumption that the response of phytoplankton blooms to artificial iron addition can be detected by the enhanced air-sea exchanges of climate-relevant gases	• No shift to a diatom-dominated community • No detection of fertilization-induced export	• High dilution rate by small patch size
9	LOHAFEX	• To trace the fate of iron-stimulated phytoplankton blooms and deep carbon export in HNLCLSi regions	• Observation of all the phases of the phytoplankton bloom from onset to termination • No shift to a diatom-dominated community • No detection of fertilization-induced export • High grazing pressure ~~and active bacterial respiration~~	
10	SEEDS-1	• To investigate the relationship between phytoplankton biomass/community and dust deposition in the subarctic North Pacific (NP) • To investigate changes in phytoplankton composition and vertical carbon flux	• A shift from oceanic diatoms to fast-growing neritic ones • The largest changes in biogeochemical parameters of all aOIF experiments • No detection of large ~~POC~~ carbon export flux	• Single iron addition • Insufficient experimental duration
11	SERIES	• To compare the response of phytoplankton in eastern subarctic with that in the western subarctic ecosystem • To investigate the most significant factor that controls the beginning to the ending of the phytoplankton bloom induced by iron addition	• Observation of all phases of the phytoplankton bloom from onset to termination • No significant increases in export fluxes below the ~~mixed layer depth~~~~MLD~~ML • High bacterial remineralization and mesozooplankton grazing pressure	
12	SEEDS-2	• To investigate the most significant factor that controls the beginning to the ending of the phytoplankton bloom induced by iron addition	• Observation of all phases of the phytoplankton bloom from onset to termination • No shift to a diatom-dominated community • No significant increases in export fluxes • Extensive copepod grazing	
13	FeeP	• To investigate the impact of iron and phosphate co-limitation on PP	• Increases in pico-phytoplankton abundances	

Sources are Martin et al. (1994); Coale et al. (1996); Coale et al. (1998); Bidigare et al. (1999); Boyd et al. (2000); Charette and Buesseler (2000); Gervais et al. (2002); Tsuda et al.

(2003); Boyd et al. (2004); Coale et al. (2004); Bakker et al. (2005); Boyd et al. (2005); de Baar et al. (2005); Hiscock and Millero (2005); Nishioka et al. (2005); Tsuda et al. (2005); Tsumune et al. (2005); Boyd et al. (2007); Rees et al. (2007); Tsuda et al. (2007); Harvey et al. (2010); Law et al. (2011); Smetacek et al. (2012); and Martin et al. (2013).

Table 3. Initial conditions and changes (Δ values) in chemical parameters during the artificial ocean iron fertilization (aOIF) experiments

	Experiment	Initial NO_3^- (μM)	ΔNO_3^- (μM)	Initial PO_4^{3-} (μM)	ΔPO_4^{3-} (μM)	Initial Si (μM)	ΔSi (μM)	Initial pCO_2 (μatm)	ΔpCO_2 (μatm)	Initial DIC (μM)	ΔDIC (μM)
1	IronEx-1	10.8	-0.70	0.92	-0.02	3.90	-0.02	471	-13.0	2044[a]	[**]-6.00[a]
2	IronEx-2	10.4	-4.00	0.80	-0.25	5.10	-4.00	538	-73.0	2051[a]	[**]-27.0[a]
3	SOIREE	25.0	-2.90	1.50	-0.24	10.0	-2.90	349	-(38.0–32.0)	2137	-(18.0–15.0)
4	EisenEx	223.50	-1.060	1.60	-0.106	104.02	~0	~360	-(20.0–18.0)	2131	-(15.0–12.0)
5	SOFeX-N	21.9	-1.40	1.40	-0.09	2.50	-1.10	367	-26.0	2109	-14.0
6	SOFeX-S	26.3	-3.50	1.87	-0.21	62.8	-4.00	365	-36.0	2176	-21.0
7	EIFEX	25.0	-1.60	1.80	[‡]~-0.30[b]	19.0	-11.0	360	-30.0	2135	-13.5
8	SAGE	7.90–10.5	1.30–3.90	0.62–0.85		0.83–0.97		330	8.00	2057	25.0
9	LOHAFEX	20.0	-2.50	1.20–1.30	[‡]~-0.15[c]	0.60–1.60		[*]~358[d]	-(15.0–7.00)		
10	SEEDS-1	18.5	-15.8			31.8	-26.8	390	-130		-58.0
11	SERIES	10.0–12.0	-(8.50–6.50)	1.00	-0.50	14.0–16.0	-(13.6–11.6)	350	-85.0	2030	-37.0
12	SEEDS-2	18.4	-5.70			36.1		370	-6.00		
13	FeeP	<0.01		~0.01							~-1.00

[a]Dissolved inorganic carbon (DIC) values in IronEx-1/-2 indicate normalized DIC (normalized DIC = DIC × 35/Salinity). [b]ΔPO_4^{3-} in EIFEX was digitized from Figure 3 of Smetacek et al. (2012). [c]ΔPO_4^{3-} in LOHAFEX was digitized from Figure 5.1 of Smetacek and Naqvi (2010). [d]ΔpCO_2 in LOHAFEX was digitized from Figure 6.1 of Smetacek and Naqvi (2010). Sources are Martin et al. (1994); Steinberg et al. (1998); Boyd et al. (2000); Bakker et al. (2001); Frew et al. (2001); Bakker et al. (2005); Boyd et al. (2005); Bozec et al. (2005); Hiscock and Millero (2005); Smetacek et al. (2005); Takeda and Tsuda (2005); Tsuda et al. (2005); Marchetti et al. (2006); Wong et al. (2006); Boyd et al. (2007); Tsuda et al. (2007); Tsumune et al. (2009); Harvey et al. (2010); Smetacek and Naqvi (2010); Berg et al. (2011); Currie et al. (2011); Law et al. (2011); Smetacek et al. (2012); Assmy et al. (2013); Ebersbach et al. (2014); and Latasa et al. (2014).~~[‡]ΔPO_4 in EIFEX was digitized from Figure 3 of Smetacek et al. (2012); [‡]ΔPO_4 in LOHAFEX was digitized from Figure 5.1 of Smetacek and Naqvi (2010). [*]ΔpCO_2 in LOHAFEX was digitized from Figure 6.1 of Smetacek and Naqvi (2010). [**]Dissolved inorganic carbon (DIC) values in IronEx-1/-2 indicate normalized DIC (normalized DIC = DIC × 35/Salinity). Sources are Martin et al. (1994); Steinberg et al. (1998); Boyd et al. (2000); Bakker et al. (2001); Frew et al. (2001); Gervais et al. (2002); Bakker et al. (2005); Boyd et al. (2005); Bozec et al. (2005); Hiscock and Millero (2005); Smetacek et al. (2005); Takeda and Tsuda (2005); Tsuda et al. (2005); Marchetti et al. (2006); Wong et al. (2006); Boyd et al. (2007); Tsuda et al. (2007); Tsumune et al. (2009); Harvey et al. (2010); Smetacek and Naqvi (2010); Berg et al. (2011); Currie et al. (2011); Law et al. (2011); Smetacek et al. (2012); Assmy et al. (2013); Ebersbach et al. (2014); and Latasa et al. (2014).~~

Table 4. Initial values of biological parameters and the values after fertilization. Note that maximum values were attained after fertilization.

	Experiment	Initial Fv/Fm	After Fv/Fm	Initial Chlorophyll-a (mg m^{-3})	After Chlorophyll-a (mg m^{-3})	Initial PP (mg C m^{-2} d^{-1})	After PP (mg C m^{-2} d^{-1})	Initial Mesozooplankton biomass (mg C m^{-3})	After Mesozooplankton biomass (mg C m^{-3})	Initial Heterotrophic bBacteria abundance (× 10^5 cells ml^{-1})	After Heterotrophic bBacteria abundance (× 10^5 cells ml^{-1})
1	IronEx-1	~0.30	0.63	0.24	0.65	*300–450[a]	*805–1330[a]				
2	IronEx-2	0.25	¶~0.57[b]	0.15–0.20	4.00	**~630[c]	**~2430[c]	~6[d] ~~3.8~~ (0–55 m)	~14[d] ~~6.6~~ (0–55 m)	6.5 ~~9.5~~	10.8
3	SOIREE	0.22	0.65	0.25	2.00	***~120[e]	***~1300[e]	‡22.8[f] (0–65 m)	‡30.1[f] (0–65 m)	1.7 ~~3.7~~	3.9
4	EisenEx	0.30	0.56	0.50	2.50	130–220	790			2.0~~4.0~~	6.2
5	SOFeX-N	0.20	0.5	‡~0.15[g]	‡~2.60[g]	§~144[h]	§~1500[h]			~~4.0~~	10.9
6	SOFeX-S	0.25	0.65	‡~0.30[g]	‡~3.80[g]	§~216[h]	§~972[h]			3.3~~4.0~~	5.3
7	EIFEX	¶¶~0.28[i]	¶¶~0.6[i]	0.70	3.16	~750	1500				
8	SAGE	0.27	0.61	0.63	1.33	540	900				
9	LOHAFEX	~0.33	0.50	0.50	1.25	<960	1560				
10	SEEDS-1	¶¶¶~0.19[j]	¶¶¶~0.42[j]	0.80–0.90	21.8	420	1670	‡6.8[f] (0–20 m)	‡7.5[f] (0–20 m)	~3.2 ~~2.5~~	8.1
11	SERIES	0.24	0.55	0.35	~5.00	300	>2000	‡7.3[f] (0–30 m)		5.5	12
12	SEEDS-2	0.29	¶¶¶¶~0.43[k]	0.80	2.48	390	>1000	‡18.9[f] (0–20 m)	‡38[f] (0–20 m)		
13	FeeP			0.06	0.07						

[a]Primary productivity (PP) in IronEx-1 was estimated by multiplying PP (mg C m^{-3} d^{-1}) with the mixed layer depth (initial: 30 m and after: 35 m). ¶[b]Fv/Fm in IronEx-2 was digitized from the Figure 3 of Behrenfeld et al. (1996)~~:~~. [c]PP in IronEx-2 was digitized from the Figure 2 of Boyd (2002). [d]Mesozooplankton biomass in IronEx-2 was digitized from the Figure 1 of Rollwagen Bollens and Landry (2000); Values in brackets correspond to the sampling layer. [e]PP in SOIREE was digitized from the Figure 3 of Gall et al. (2001a). [f]Mesozooplankton biomass indicates copepod biomass; Values in brackets correspond to the sampling layer; After mesozooplankton biomass is the mean value averaged for the experimental period after iron addition. [g]Chlorophyll-a concentrations in SOFeX-N/-S were digitized from the supplementary Figure 5 of Coale et al. (2004). [h]PP values in SOFeX-N/-S were digitized from the

Figure 4 of Coale et al. (2004). ¶¶¶Fv/Fm in EIFEX was digitized from the Figure 2 of Berg et al. (2011).; ¶¶¶¶Fv/Fm in SEEDS-1 was digitized from the Figure 2 of Tsuda et al. (2003).; ¶¶¶¶¶Fv/Fm in SEEDS-2 was digitized from the Figure 6 of Tsuda et al. (2007).

‡Chlorophyll a concentrations in SOFeX-N/S were digitized from the supplementary Figure 5 of Coale et al. (2004). *Primary productivity (PP) in IronEx-1 was estimated by multiplying PP (mg C m^{-3} d^{-1}) with the mixed layer depth (initial: 30 m and after: 35 m); **PP in IronEx-2 was digitized from the Figure 2 of Boyd (2002); ***PP in SOIREE was digitized from the Figure 3 of Gall et al. (2001a); §PP values in SOFeX-N/S were digitized from the Figure 4 of Coale et al. (2004). ‡Mesozooplankton biomass indicates copepod biomass; Values in brackets correspond to the sampling layer; After mesozooplankton biomass is the mean value averaged for the experimental period after iron addition.

Sources are Kolber et al. (1994); Behrenfeld et al. (1996); Coale et al. (1996); Steinberg et al. (1998); Boyd et al. (2000); Rollwagen Bollens and Landry (2000);Rollwagen and Landry (2000); Boyd and Law (2001); Cochlan (2001); Gall et al., (2001a); Hall and Safi (2001); Zeldis (2001); Zeldis et al. (2001); Boyd (2002); Gervais et al. (2002); Tsuda et al. (2003); Arrieta et al. (2004); Boyd et al. (2004); Coale et al. (2004); Oliver et al. (2004); Boyd et al. (2005); de Baar et al. (2005); Suzuki et al. (2005); Takeda and Tsuda (2005); Tsuda et al. (2005); Levasseur et al. (2006); Boyd et al. (2007); Tsuda et al. (2007); Kudo et al. (2009); Tsuda et al. (2009); Harvey et al. (2010); Berg et al. (2011); Currie et al. (2011); Peloquin et al. (2011a); Smetacek et al. (2012); Thiele et al. (2012); and Martin et al. (2013); and Latasa et al. (2014).

Table 5. Initial values of the export flux and the values after fertilization (mg C m^{-2} d^{-1}), the corresponding depth inside and outside the fertilized patch for artificial ocean iron fertilization (aOIF) experiments, and measurement method. Values in brackets correspond to the day of measurement after fertilization.

	Experiment	In-patch Initial (day)	In-patch After (day)	Outside-patch Initial (day)	Outside-patch After (day)	Depth (m)	Method
1	IronEx-1						
2	IronEx-2	84 (0)	600 (7–14~~10~~)			25	Water-column ^{234}Th
3	SOIREE		~87			100	Water-column ^{234}Th
			185 (11–13)	146 (0–2)	78 (11–13)	110	Drifting trap
			74 (11–13)	73 (0–2)	38 (11–13)	310	Drifting trap
4	EisenEx						
5	SOFeX-N						
6	SOFeX-S	36 (5)	112 (27)	48 (6)	49 (26)	50	Water-column ^{234}Th
		19 (5)	142 (27)	38 (6)	56 (26)	100	Water-column ^{234}Th
7	EIFEX	*~340 (0)[a]	*~1692 (32)[a]	*~396 (0)[a]	*~516 (32)[a]	100	Water-column ^{234}Th
8	SAGE						
9	LOHAFEX	**~~60~~ 62 (0)[b]	**~94 (25)[b]	**~7~~8~~7 (4)[b]	**~9~~7~~54 (~~23~~34)[b]	100	Water-column ^{234}Th
		~6 (0–2)[c]	~5 (13–15)[c]		~29 (26–27)[c]	200	Neutrally buoyant sediment trap
			~12 (28–37)[c]		~11 (24–29)[c]	450	Neutrally buoyant sediment trap
10	SEEDS-1	234 (1–3)	141 (12–14)	148 (1–6)	154 (10–14)	40	Drifting trap
		100 (0–2)	423 (9–13)			50	‡Water-column ^{234}Th[d]
		68 (1–3)	85 (12–14)	61 (1–6)	91 (10–14)	100	Drifting trap
		121 (0–2)	460 (2–9)			200	Water-column ^{234}Th
11	SERIES	‡~1~~20~~38 (3)[e]	480 (24)	192 (3)	139 (15)	50	Drifting trap
		‡~48 (3)[e]	‡~192 (24)[e]			100	Drifting trap
12	SEEDS-2	290 (1–4)	580 (19–22)	300 (1–8)	509 (18–31)	40	Drifting trap
		316 (1–4)	337 (19–22)	213 (1–8)	204 (18–31)	100	Drifting trap
13	FeeP						

[a]*Export flux in EIFEX was digitized from the supplementary Figure 5.1 of Smetacek et al. (2012).~~;~~ [b]**Export flux in LOHAFEX was digitized from the Figure 4 of Martin et al. (2013).~~;~~ [c]Export flux in LOHAFEX was digitized from the Figure 6 of Martin et al. (2013). [d]‡Export flux in SEEDS-1 was determined from the suspended particles.~~;~~ [e]‡Export flux in SERIES was digitized from the Figure 2 of Boyd et al. (2004).

Sources are Bidigare et al. (1999); Charette and Buesseler (2000); Nodder and Waite (2001); Boyd et al. (2004); Aono et al. (2005); Buesseler et al. (2005); Aramaki et al. (2009); Smetacek et al. (2012); and Martin et al. (2013).

Figure Captions

Fig. 1. Diagram showing the monthly atmospheric CO_2 concentrations (ppm) (blue) measured at the Mauna Loa Observatory, Hawaii (http://www.esrl.noaa.gov/gmd/ccgg/trends/data.html), global monthly land-~~-~~surface air and sea surface temperature anomalies (°C) (red) (http://data.giss.nasa.gov/gistemp/), and pH (green) measured at Station ALOHA~~ALOHA station~~ in the central North Pacific (http://hahana.soest.hawaii.edu/hot/products/HOT_surface_CO2.txt). The data values represent moving average values for 12 months and shading indicates the standard deviation for 12 months.

Fig. 2. Schematic representation of several proposed climate-engineering methods (modified from Matthews (1996)).

Fig. 3. The iron hypothesis, as suggested by Martin (1990). (a) Effectiveness of the biological pump under normal conditions.~~,~~ (b) Effectiveness of the biological pump following iron enrichment (modified from Sarmiento and Gruber (2006)).~~,~~ ~~and~~ (c) Schematic diagram of the decrease in the downward flux of organic carbon as a function of depth in the water column (modified from Lampitt et al. (2008)). OM is organic matter and DIC is dissolved inorganic carbon.

Fig. 4. Global annual distribution of surface (a) Chlorophyll concentrations (mg m^{-3}), (b) Nitrate concentrations (µM), and (c) Silicate concentrations (µM). The chlorophyll-a concentration distribution was obtained from the Aqua MODIS chlorophyll-a composite from July 2002 to February 2016 (https://oceancolor.gsfc.nasa.gov/cgi/l3), nitrate and silicate were obtained from the World Ocean Atlas 2013 dataset (https://odv.awi.de/en/data/ocean/world-ocean-atlas-2013) and plotted using Ocean Data View (Schlitzer, 2017). The white circles indicate the locations of 13 artificial ocean iron fertilization (aOIF) experiments and the black triangles indicate the locations of ~~two~~ six natural OIF (nOIF) experiments. Note that the numbers indicate the order of the aOIF experiments and the Roman-numerals indicate the order of the nOIF experiments (see Table 1).

Fig. 5. Photographs of the iron addition procedure. Panels a-f taken during the European Iron Fertilization Experiment (EIFEX), Surface Ocean Lower Atmosphere Study (SOLAS) Air–Sea Gas Exchange (SAGE), and Indo-German iron fertilization experiment (LOHAFEX): (a) Iron-(II) sulfate bags. (b) The funnel used to pour iron and hydrochloric acid. (c) Tank system used for mixing Iron(II) sulfate, hydrochloric acid, and seawater (Smetacek, 2015). (d) Preparation for release: the deck of RV *Tangaroa* with the iron tanks on the left and the SF_6 tracer tanks on the right (Photo: Matt Walkington) (https://www.niwa.co.nz/coasts-and-oceans/research-projects/sage). (e) Outlet pipe connected to the tank system. (f) Pumping iron into the prop wash during EIFEX (Smetacek, 2015).

Fig. 6. (a) Maximum (bar with dotted line) and initial (bar with solid line) patch size (km^2) during artificial ocean iron fertilization (aOIF) experiments. (b) ~~Total (bar with dotted line) and initial~~ First target iron concentrations ~~(bar with solid line) iron(II) added~~ (nM~~kg~~). (c) Maximum (bar with dotted line) and minimum (bar with solid line) ~~mixed layer depth (MLD~~mixed layer depth~~)~~ (MLD, m) during aOIF experiments. (d) Initial sea surface temperature (SST, °C). (e) Initial nitrate concentrations (µM). (f) Initial silicate concentrations (µM). (g) Initial Fv/Fm ratios. (h) Initial chlorophyll-a concentrations (mg m^{-3}). Note that the numbers on the X axis indicate the order of aOIF experiments as given in Fig. 4 and Table 1 and are grouped according to ocean basins; Equatorial Pacific (EP) (yellow bar), Southern Ocean (SO) (blue bar), subarctic North Pacific (NP) (red bar), and subtropical North Atlantic (NA) (green bar). Sources are Kolber et al. (1994); Martin et al. (1994); Behrenfeld et al. (1996); Coale et al. (1996); Coale et al. (1998); Steinberg et al. (1998); Boyd et al. (2000); Boyd and Law (2001); Gall et al. (2001b); Gervais et al. (2002); Law et al. (2003); Tsuda et al. (2003); Coale et al. (2004); Turner et al. (2004); Bakker et al. (2005); Boyd et al. (2005); Bozec et al. (2005); de Baar et al. (2005); Hiscock and Millero (2005); Takeda and Tsuda (2005); Tsuda et al. (2005); Tsumune et al. (2005); Law et al. (2006); Marchetti et al. (2006); Boyd et al. (2007); Rees et al. (2007); Tsuda et al. (2007); Suzuki et al. (2009); Tsumune et al. (2009); Harvey et al. (2010); Smetacek and Naqvi (2010); Berg et al. (2011); Hadfield (2011); Law et al. (2011); Peloquin et al. (2011a); Smetacek et al. (2012); Thiele et al. (2012); Martin et al. (2013); Ebersbach et al. (2014); and Latasa et al. (2014).

Fig. 7. (a) Maximum (bar with dotted line) and initial (bar with solid line) Fv/Fm ratios during artificial ocean iron fertilization (aOIF) experiments. (b) Changes in nitrate concentrations (ΔNO_3^- = $[NO_3^-]_{post\text{-}fertilization\ (posf)}$ − $[NO_3^-]_{pre\text{-}fertilization\ (pref)}$; µM). (c) Maximum (bar with dotted line) and initial (bar with solid line) chlorophyll-a concentrations (mg m^{-3}). (d) Distributions of chlorophyll-a concentrations (mg m^{-3}) on day 24 after iron addition in the Southern Ocean iron experiment-north (SOFeX-N) from MODIS Terra Level-2 daily image and on day 20 in the SOFeX-south (SOFeX-S) from SeaWiFS Level-2 daily image (white dotted box indicates phytoplankton bloom during aOIF experiments). (e) Changes in primary productivity (PP) ($\Delta PP = [PP]_{postf} - [PP]_{pref}$; mg C m^{-2} d^{-1}). (f) Changes in partial pressure of CO_2 (pCO_2) ($\Delta pCO_2 = [pCO_2]_{postf} - [pCO_2]_{pref}$; µatm). The color bar indicates changes in dissolved inorganic carbon (DIC) ($\Delta DIC = [DIC]_{postf} - [DIC]_{pref}$; µM). Note that the PP (mg C m^{-2} d^{-1}) of aOIF experiment number 1 (IronEx-1) was estimated by multiplying the

PP (mg C m^{-3} d^{-1}) with the mixed layer depth (initial: 30 m and after: 35 m). The numbers on the X axis indicate the order of aOIF experiments as given in Fig. 4 and Table 1 and are grouped according to ocean basins; Equatorial Pacific (EP) (yellow bar), Southern Ocean (SO) (blue bar), subarctic North Pacific (NP) (red bar), and subtropical North Atlantic (NA) (green bar). Sources are Kolber et al. (1994); Martin et al. (1994); Behrenfeld et al. (1996); Coale et al. (1996); Steinberg et al. (1998); Boyd et al. (2000); Boyd and Law (2001); Frew et al. (2001); Gall et al. (2001a); Boyd (2002); Gervais et al. (2002); Tsuda et al. (2003); Coale et al. (2004); Boyd et al. (2004); Bakker et al. (2005); Boyd et al. (2005); Bozec et al. (2005); de Baar et al. (2005); Hiscock and Millero (2005); Smetacek et al. (2005); Takeda and Tsuda (2005); Tsuda et al. (2005); Wong et al. (2006); Boyd et al. (2007); Tsuda et al. (2007); Kudo et al. (2009); Tsumune et al. (2009); Harvey et al. (2010); Smetacek and Naqvi (2010); Berg et al. (2011); Currie et al. (2011); Law et al. (2011); Peloquin et al. (2011a); Smetacek et al. (2012); Thiele et al. (2012); Assmy et al. (2013); Martin et al. (2013); and Ebersbach et al. (2014); and Latasa et al. (2014).

Fig. 8. (a) Time-series of particulate organic carbon (POC) fluxes estimated from the water-column based ^{234}Th method (mg C m^{-2} d^{-1}) of the upper 100- m layer inside (red bar) and outside the fertilized patch (blue bar) during the European Iron Fertilization Experiment (EIFEX) (modified from Smetacek et al. (2012)). (b) Time-series of vertically integrated ^{234}Th (dpm l^{-1}) inside (red circles) and outside the fertilized patch (blue diamonds) relative to the parent ^{238}U (dpm l^{-1}; dotted black line) during the Southern Ocean Iron Release Experiment (SOIREE) (modified from Nodder et al. (2001)).

Fig. 9. Assessment framework for scientific research involving ocean fertilization (OF) (modified from Resolution LC-LP.2, (2010)).

Fig. 10. (a) Time-series of mixed layer depth-integrated chlorophyll-a concentrations (mg m^{-2}) during the Southern Ocean Iron Release Experiment (SOIREE) (brown line), Subarctic Pacific iron Experiment for Ecosystem Dynamics Study-1 (SEEDS-1) (coral line), Subarctic Ecosystem Response to Iron Enrichment Study (SERIES) (cyan line), SEEDS-2 (blue line), and European Iron Fertilization Experiment (EIFEX) (teal line). (b) The distributions of chlorophyll-a concentrations (mg m^{-3}) on day 5 and day 45 42 during SOIREE from SeaWiFS Level-2 daily images. Sources are Gall et al. (2001b); Boyd and Abraham (2001); Tsuda et al. (2007); and Assmy et al. (2013).

Fig. 11. Schematic diagram of the Korean Iron Fertilization Experiment in the Southern Ocean (KIFES) representing the experiment target site (eddy structure) and survey methods (underway sampling systems, multiple sediment traps, sub-bottom profilers, sediment coring systems, and satellite observations).

Fig. 1

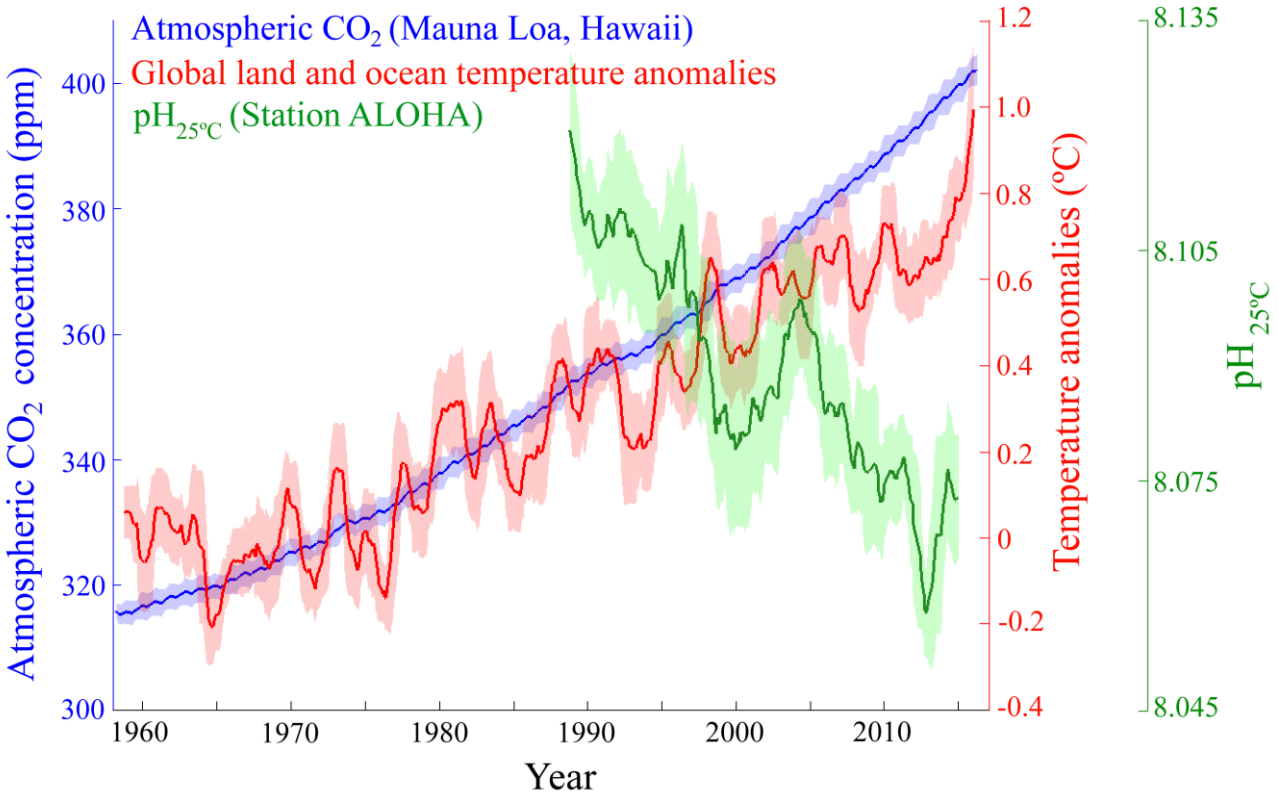

Atmospheric CO_2 (Mauna Loa, Hawaii)
Global land and ocean temperature anomalies
$pH_{25°C}$ (Station ALOHA)
Atmospheric CO_2 concentration (ppm)
Temperature anomalies (°C)
$pH_{25°C}$
Year
300
320
340
360
380
400
-0.4
-0.2
0
0.2
0.4
0.6
0.8
1.0
1.2
8.045
8.075
8.105
8.135
1960
1970
1980
1990
2000
2010

Fig. 2

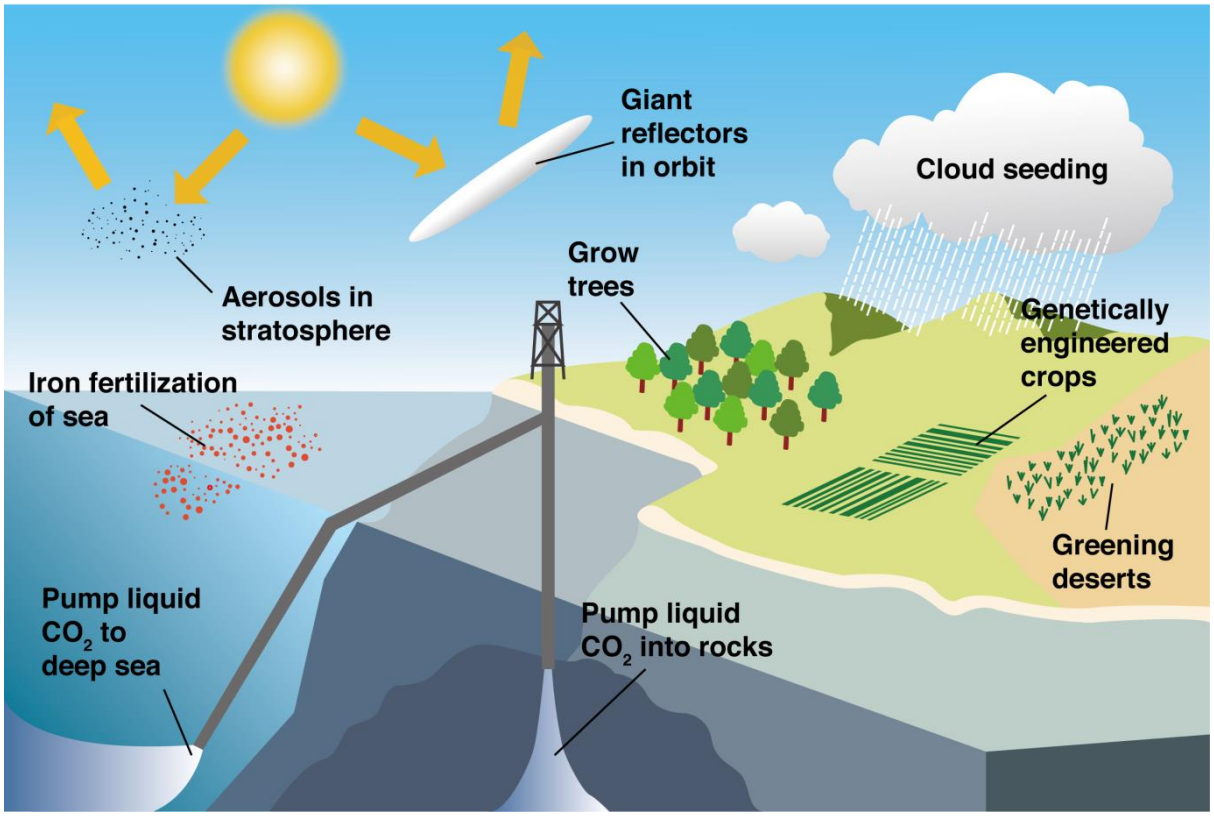
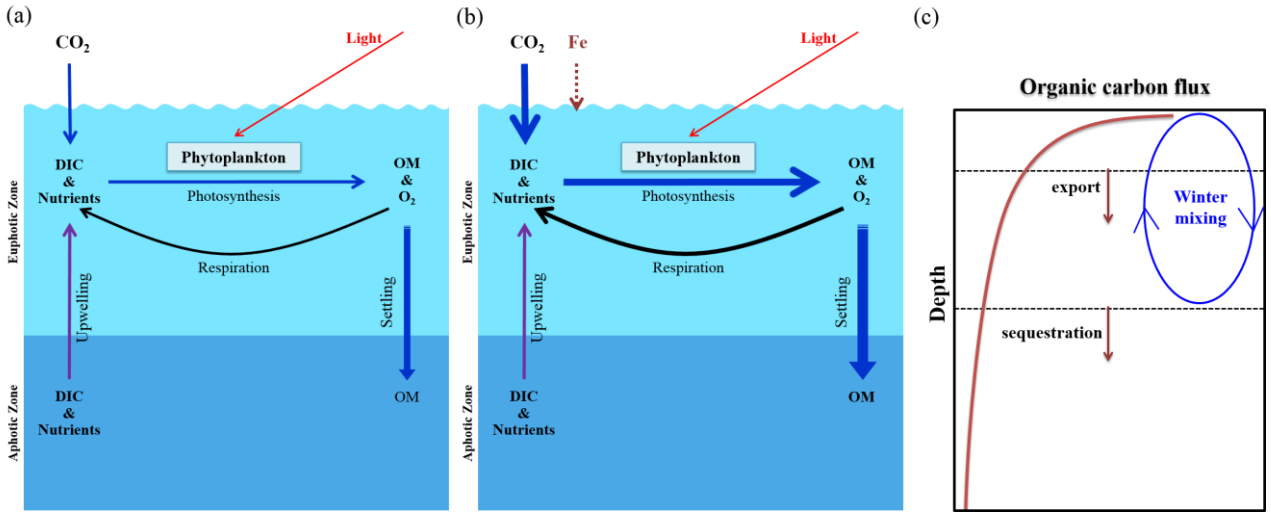
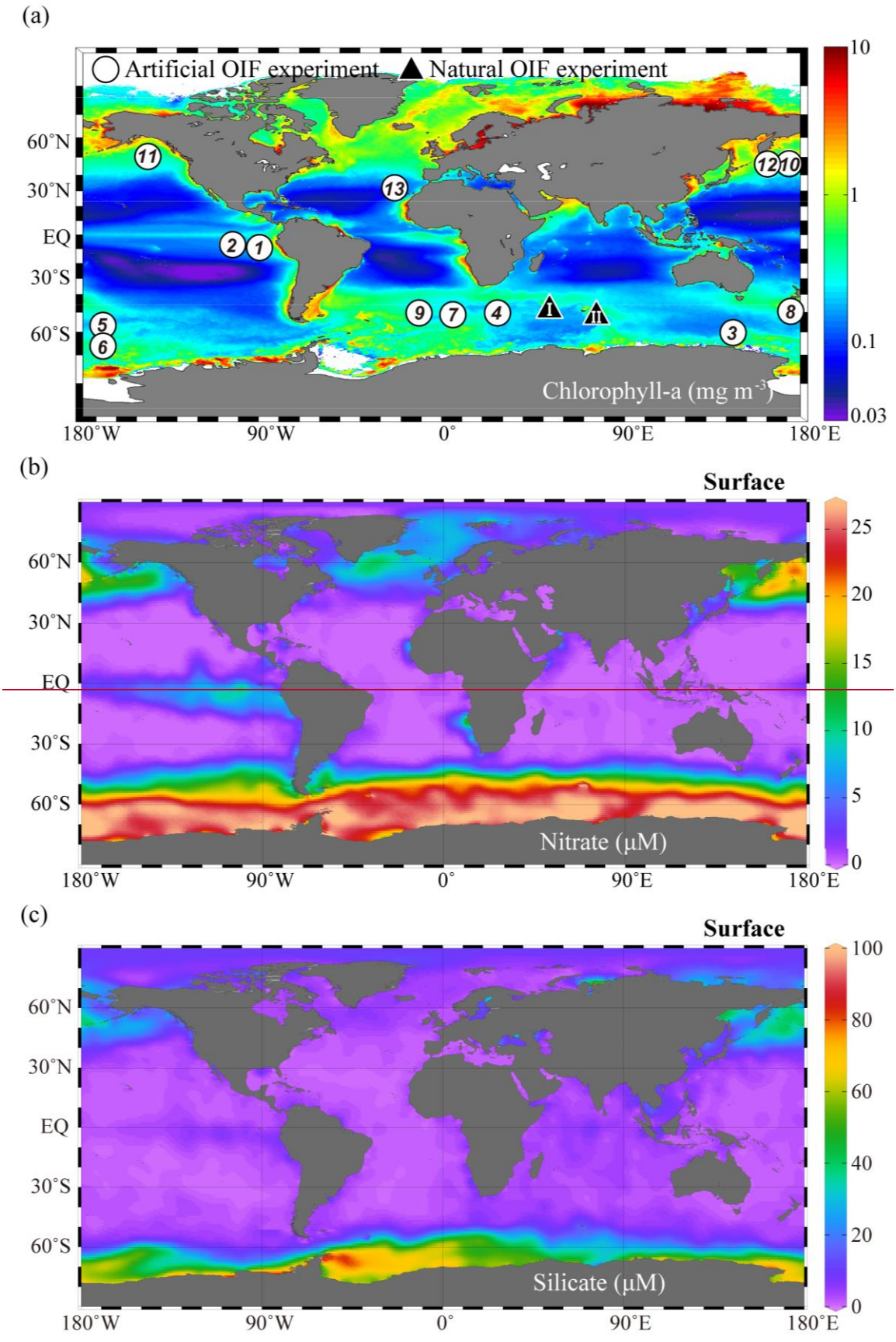

Giant reflectors in orbit
Cloud seeding
Grow trees
Aerosols in stratosphere
Genetically engineered crops
Iron fertilization of sea
Greening deserts
Pump liquid CO_2 to deep sea
Pump liquid CO_2 into rocks

Fig. 3


(a)
CO_2
Light
Phytoplankton
DIC & Nutrients
Photosynthesis
OM & O_2
Respiration
Upwelling
Settling
OM
DIC & Nutrients
Euphotic Zone
Aphotic Zone
(b)
CO_2
Fe
Light
Phytoplankton
DIC & Nutrients
Photosynthesis
OM & O_2
Respiration
Upwelling
Settling
OM
DIC & Nutrients
Euphotic Zone
Aphotic Zone
(c)
Organic carbon flux
Depth
export
Winter mixing
sequestration


(a)
Artificial OIF experiment
Natural OIF experiment
60°N
30°N
EQ
30°S
60°S
180°W
90°W
0°
90°E
180°E
Chlorophyll-a (mg m-3)
10
1
0.1
0.03
(b)
Surface
Nitrate (μM)
25
20
15
10
5
0
(c)
Surface
Silicate (μM)
100
80
60
40
20
0

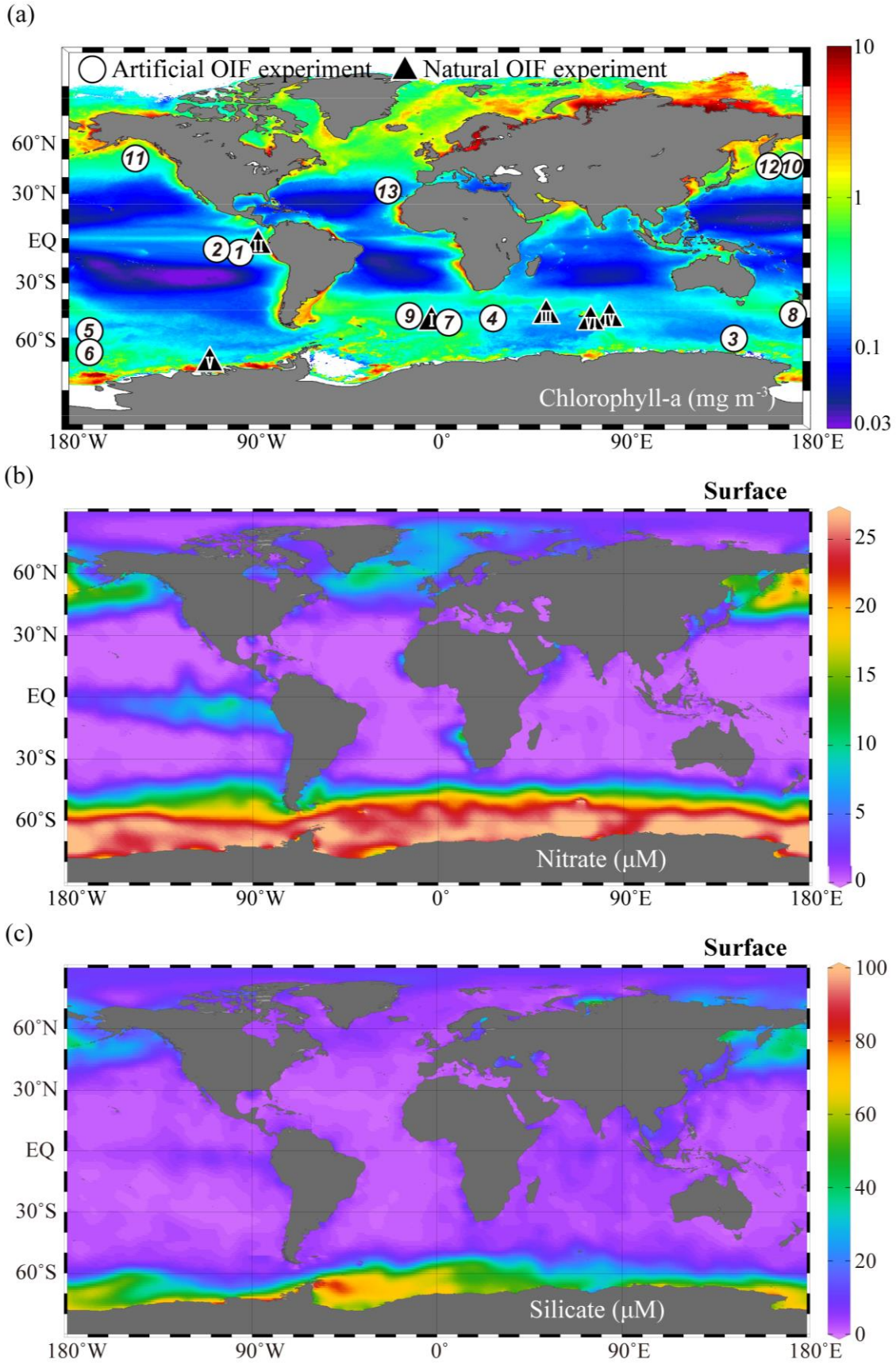

(a)
Artificial OIF experiment
Natural OIF experiment
60°N
30°N
EQ
30°S
60°S
180°W
90°W
0°
90°E
180°E
Chlorophyll-a (mg m-3)
10
1
0.1
0.03
(b)
Surface
Nitrate (μM)
25
20
15
10
5
0
(c)
Surface
Silicate (μM)
100
80
60
40
20
0

Fig. 5

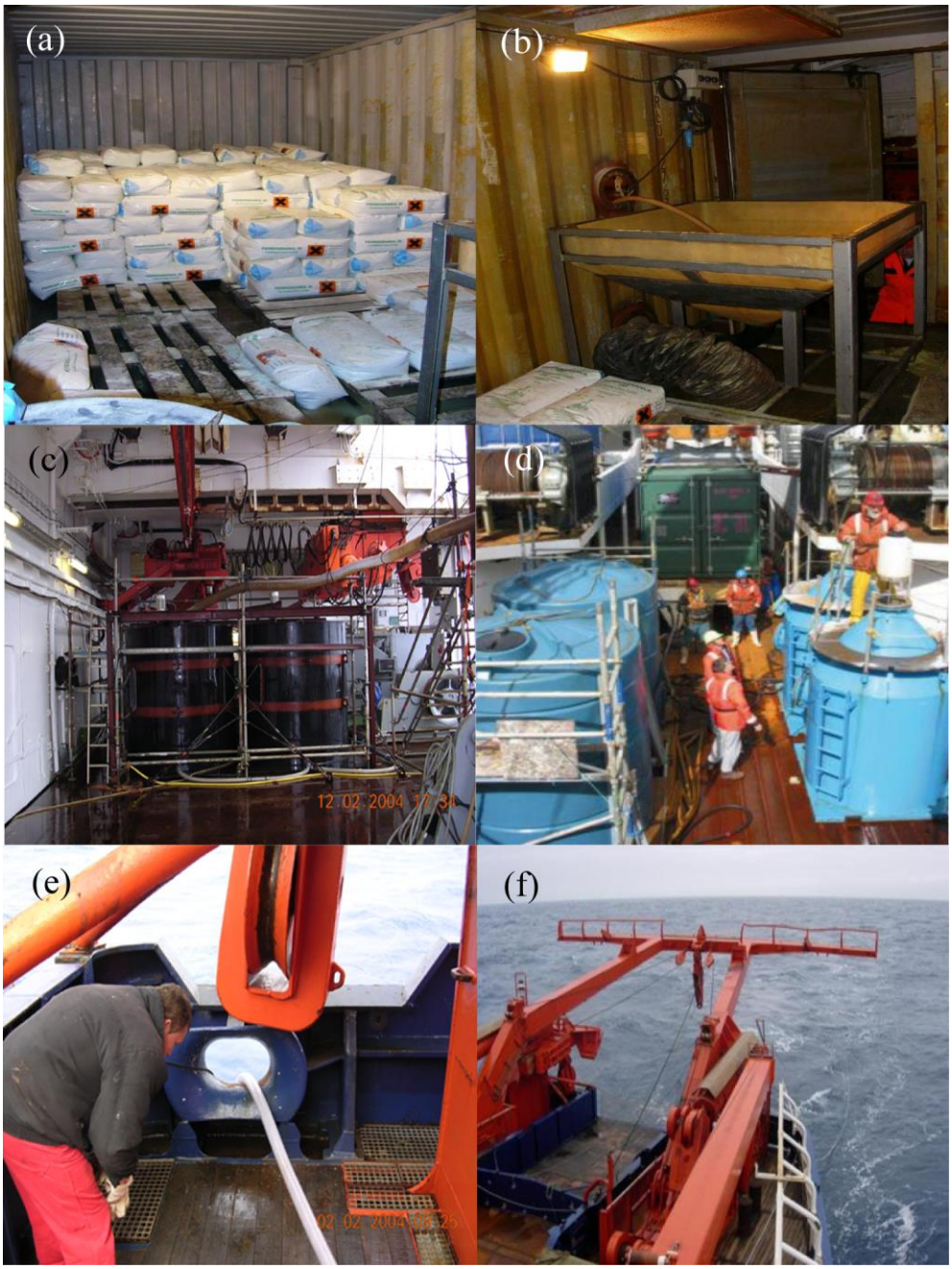
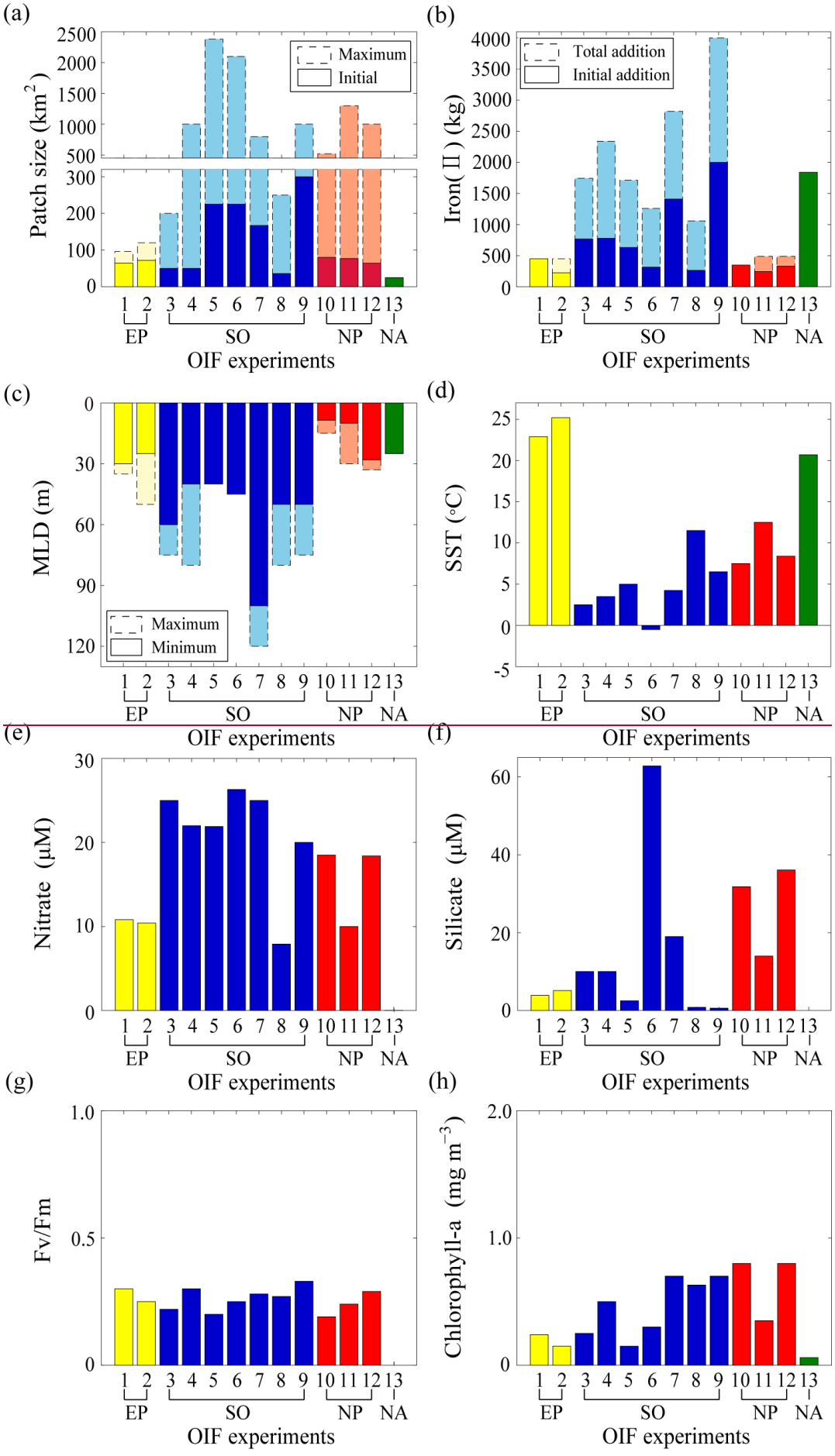
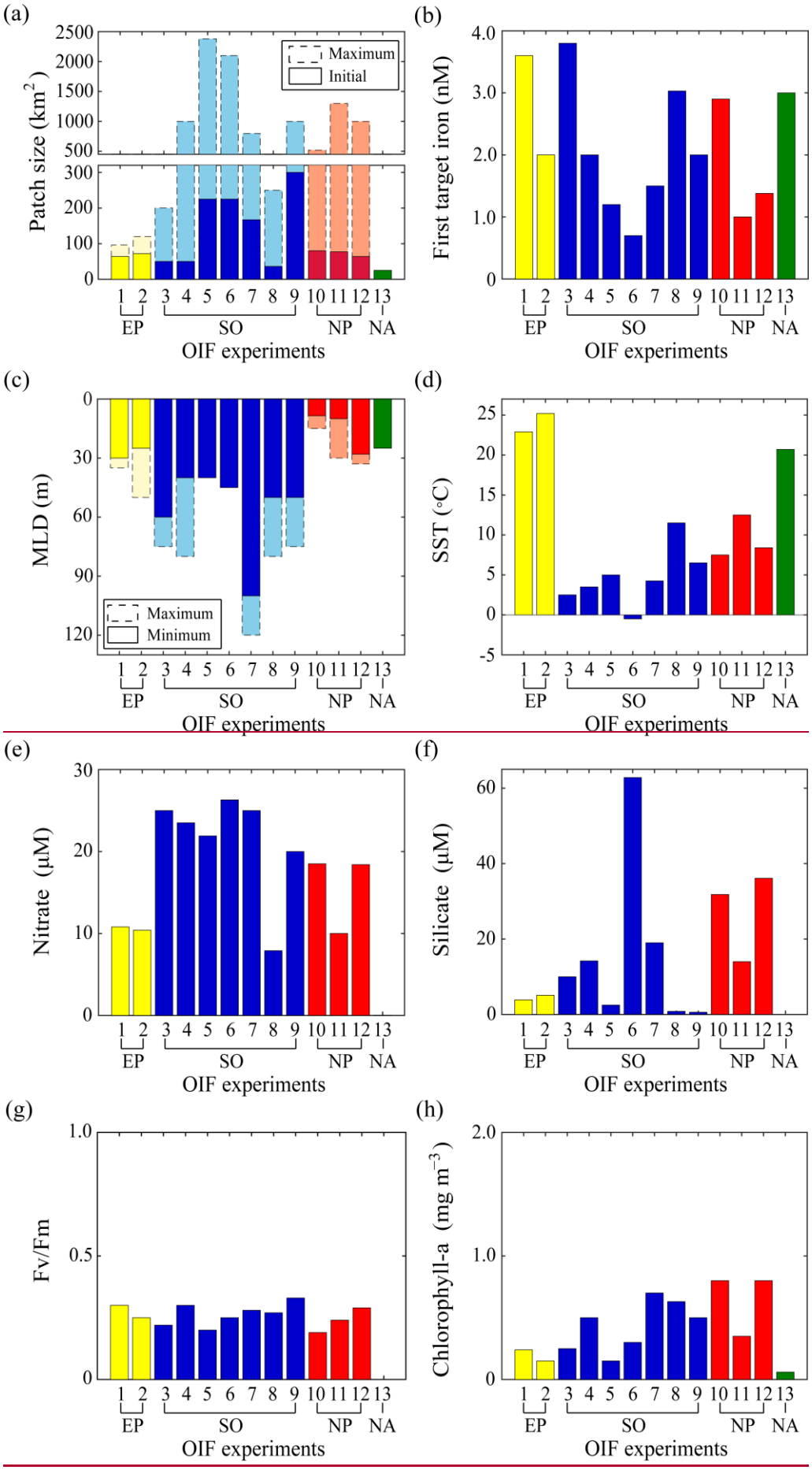


Fig. 6


(a)
Patch size (km^2)
Maximum
Initial
(b)
Iron(II) (kg)
Total addition
Initial addition
(c)
MLD (m)
Maximum
Minimum
(d)
SST (°C)
(e)
Nitrate (μM)
(f)
Silicate (μM)
(g)
Fv/Fm
(h)
Chlorophyll-a (mg m^{-3})
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13
EP
SO
NP
NA
OIF experiments


(a)
Patch size (km^2)
Maximum
Initial
(b)
First target iron (nM)
(c)
MLD (m)
Maximum
Minimum
(d)
SST (°C)
(e)
Nitrate (μM)
(f)
Silicate (μM)
(g)
Fv/Fm
(h)
Chlorophyll-a (mg m^{-3})
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13
EP
SO
NP
NA
OIF experiments

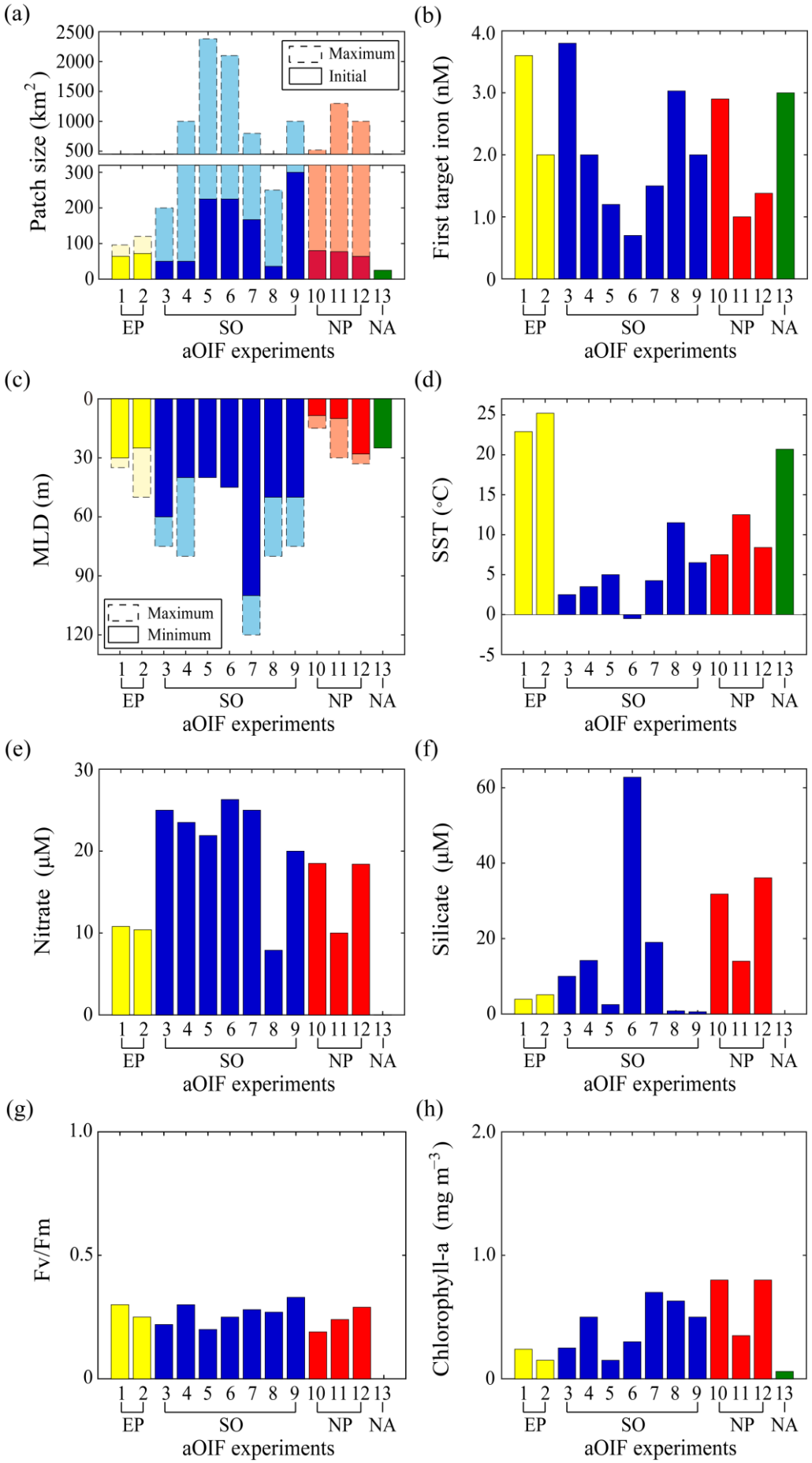
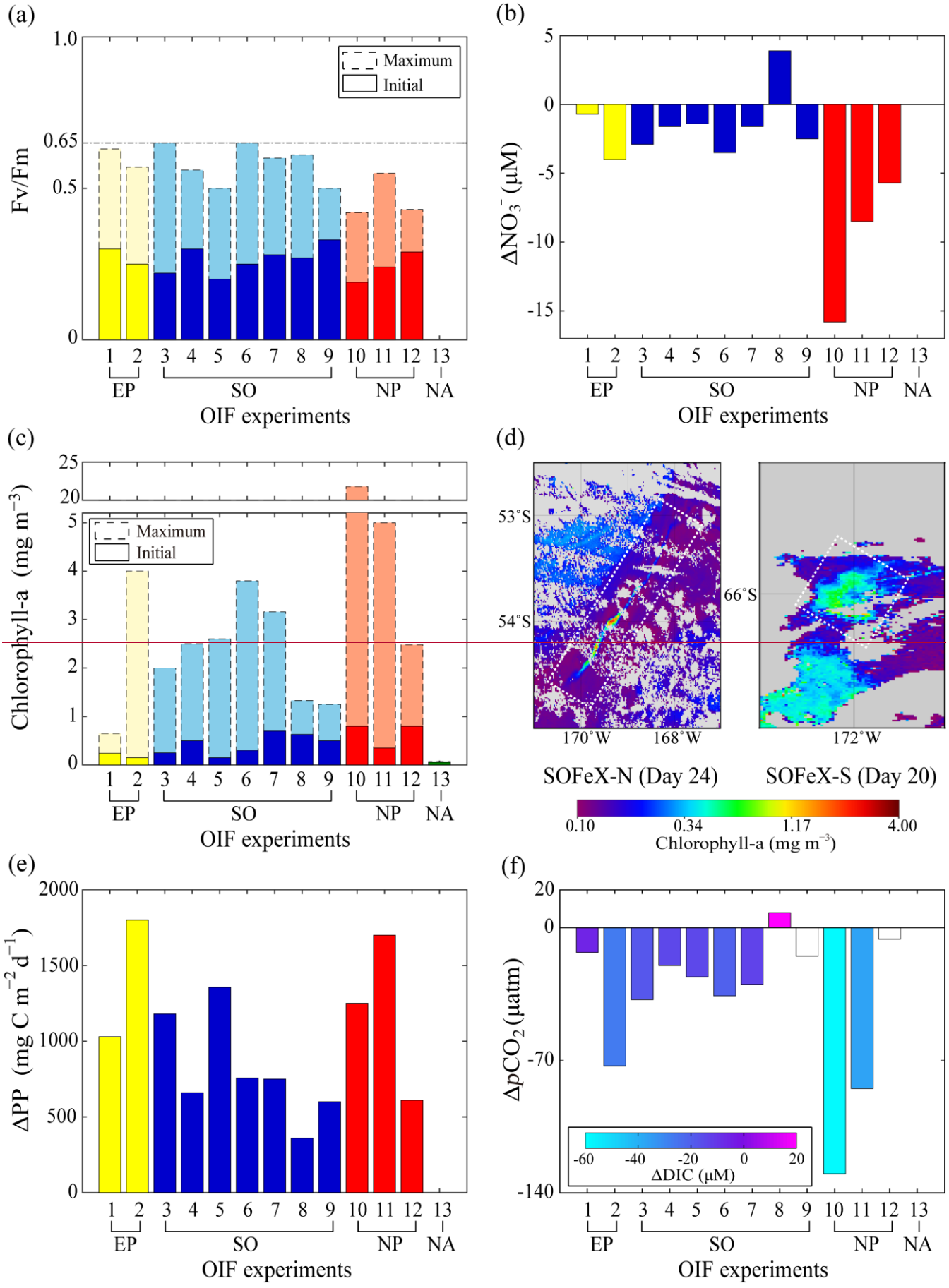

(a)
Patch size (km^2)
Maximum
Initial
(b)
First target iron (nM)
(c)
MLD (m)
Maximum
Minimum
(d)
SST (°C)
(e)
Nitrate (μM)
(f)
Silicate (μM)
(g)
Fv/Fm
(h)
Chlorophyll-a (mg m^{-3})
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13
EP
SO
NP
NA
aOIF experiments

Fig. 7


(a)
Fv/Fm
Maximum
Initial
EP
SO
NP
NA
OIF experiments
(b)
ΔNO3- (μM)
OIF experiments
(c)
Chlorophyll-a (mg m-3)
OIF experiments
(d)
53°S
54°S
66°S
170°W
168°W
172°W
SOFeX-N (Day 24)
SOFeX-S (Day 20)
0.10
0.34
1.17
4.00
Chlorophyll-a (mg m-3)
(e)
ΔPP (mg C m-2 d-1)
OIF experiments
(f)
ΔpCO2 (μatm)
-60
-40
-20
0
20
ΔDIC (μM)
OIF experiments

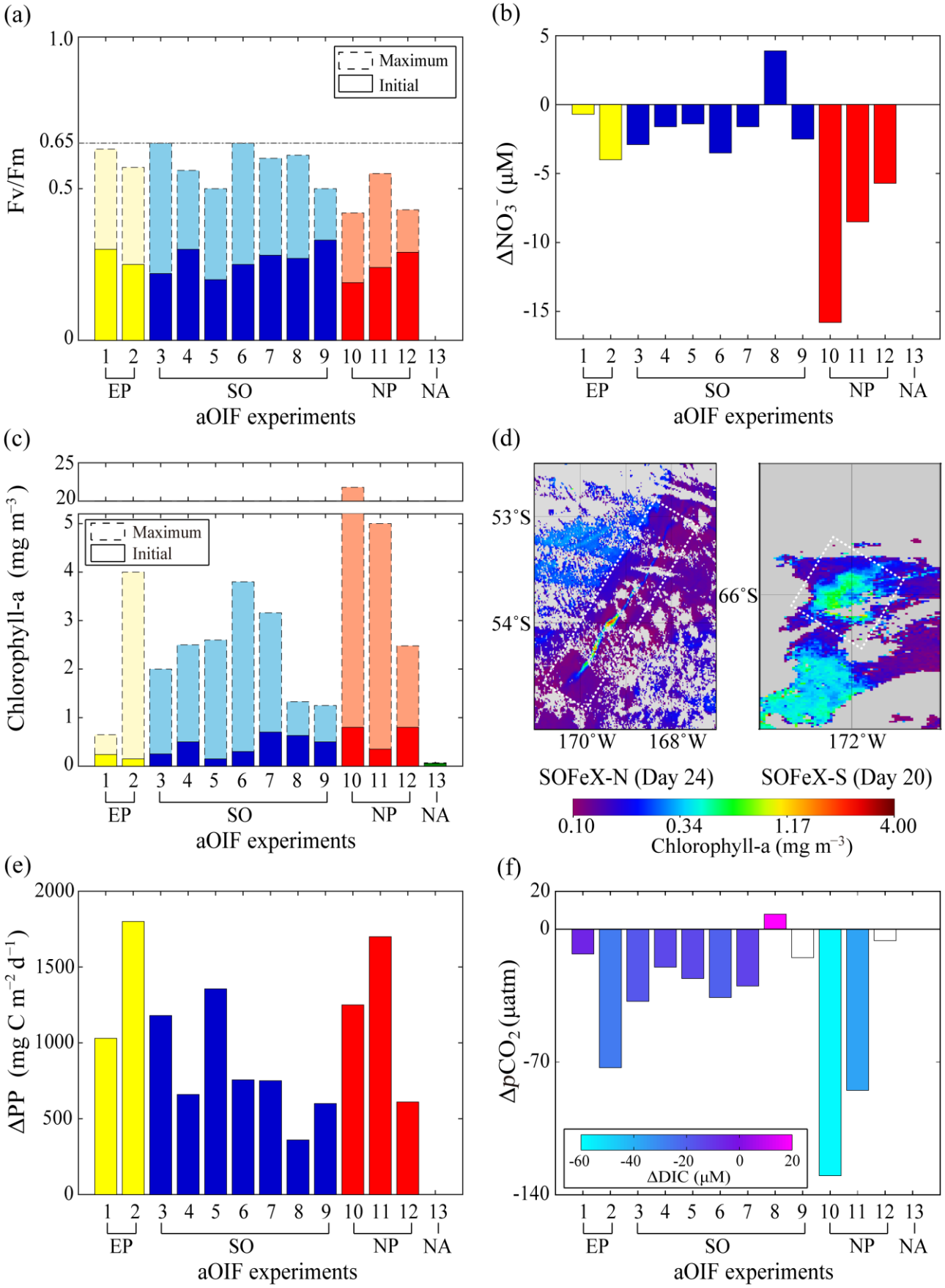
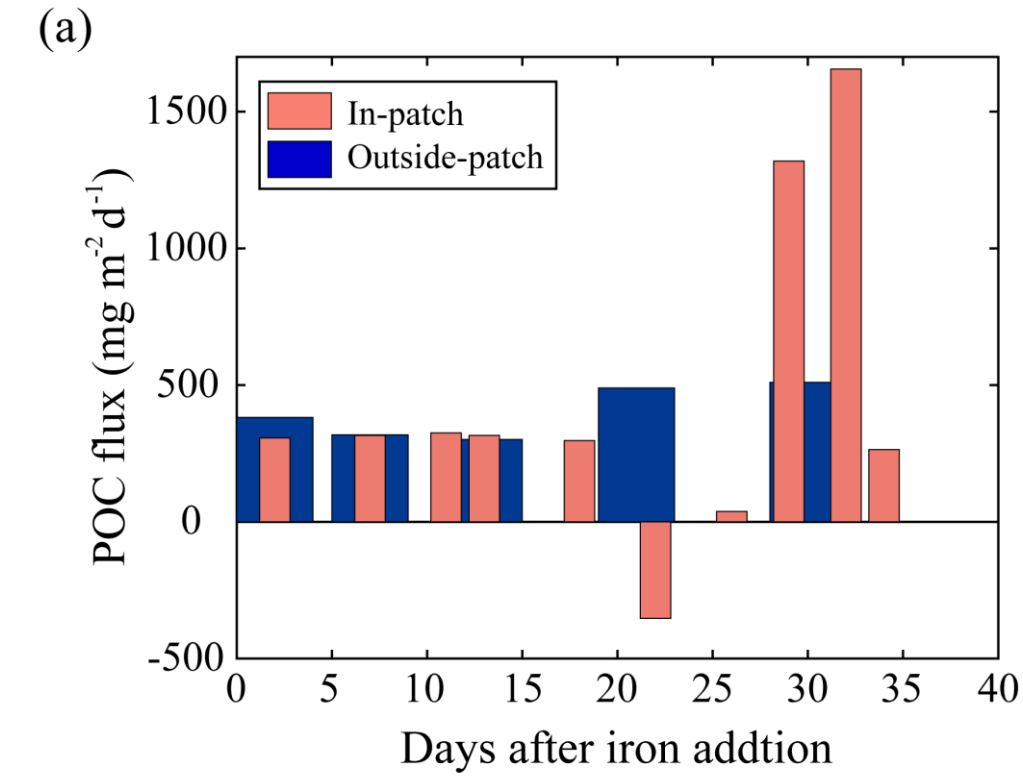
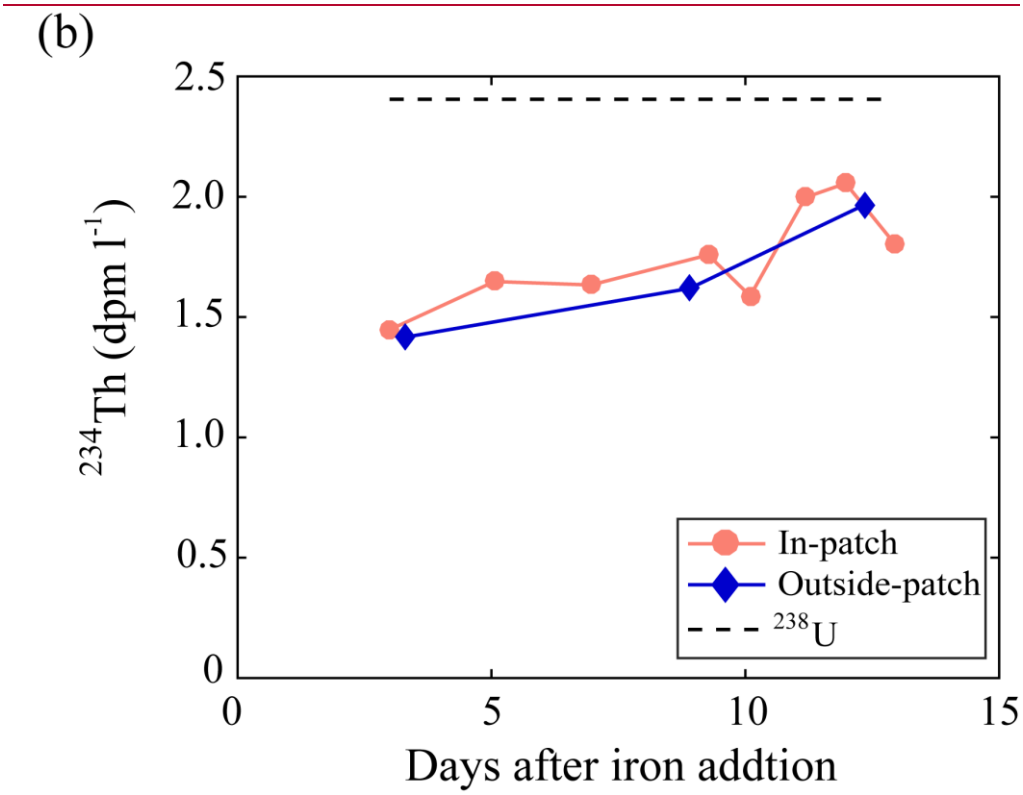

(a)
Fv/Fm
Maximum
Initial
aOIF experiments
(b)
ΔNO3- (μM)
aOIF experiments
(c)
Chlorophyll-a (mg m-3)
aOIF experiments
(d)
53°S
54°S
66°S
170°W
168°W
172°W
SOFeX-N (Day 24)
SOFeX-S (Day 20)
0.10
0.34
1.17
4.00
Chlorophyll-a (mg m-3)
(e)
ΔPP (mg C m-2 d-1)
aOIF experiments
(f)
ΔpCO2 (μatm)
-60
-40
-20
0
20
ΔDIC (μM)
aOIF experiments
EP
SO
NP
NA

Fig. 8


(a)
In-patch
Outside-patch
POC flux (mg m-2 d-1)
1500
1000
500
0
-500
0
5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
Days after iron addtion


(b)
234Th (dpm l-1)
2.5
2.0
1.5
1.0
0.5
0
In-patch
Outside-patch
238U
0
5
10
15
Days after iron addtion

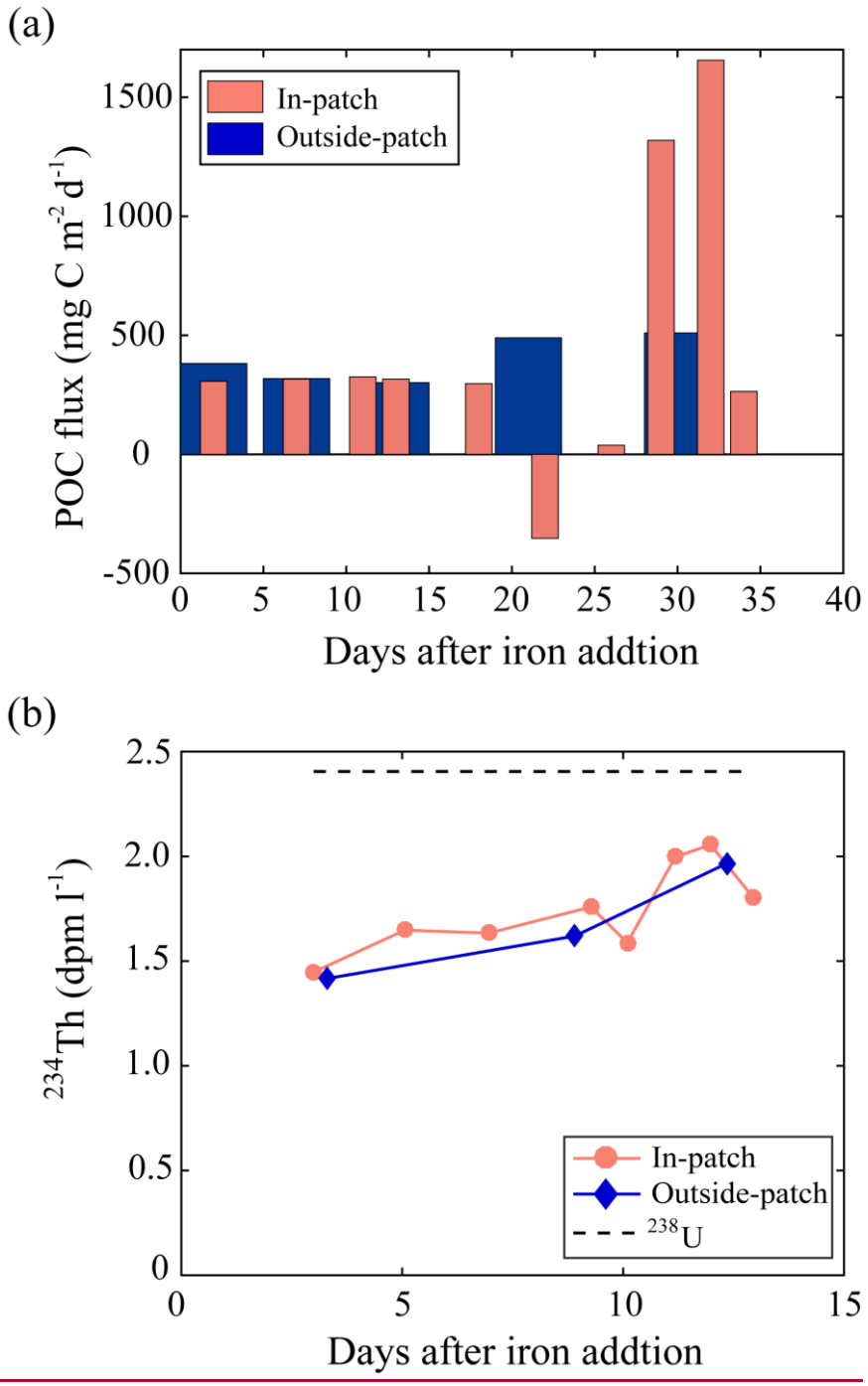
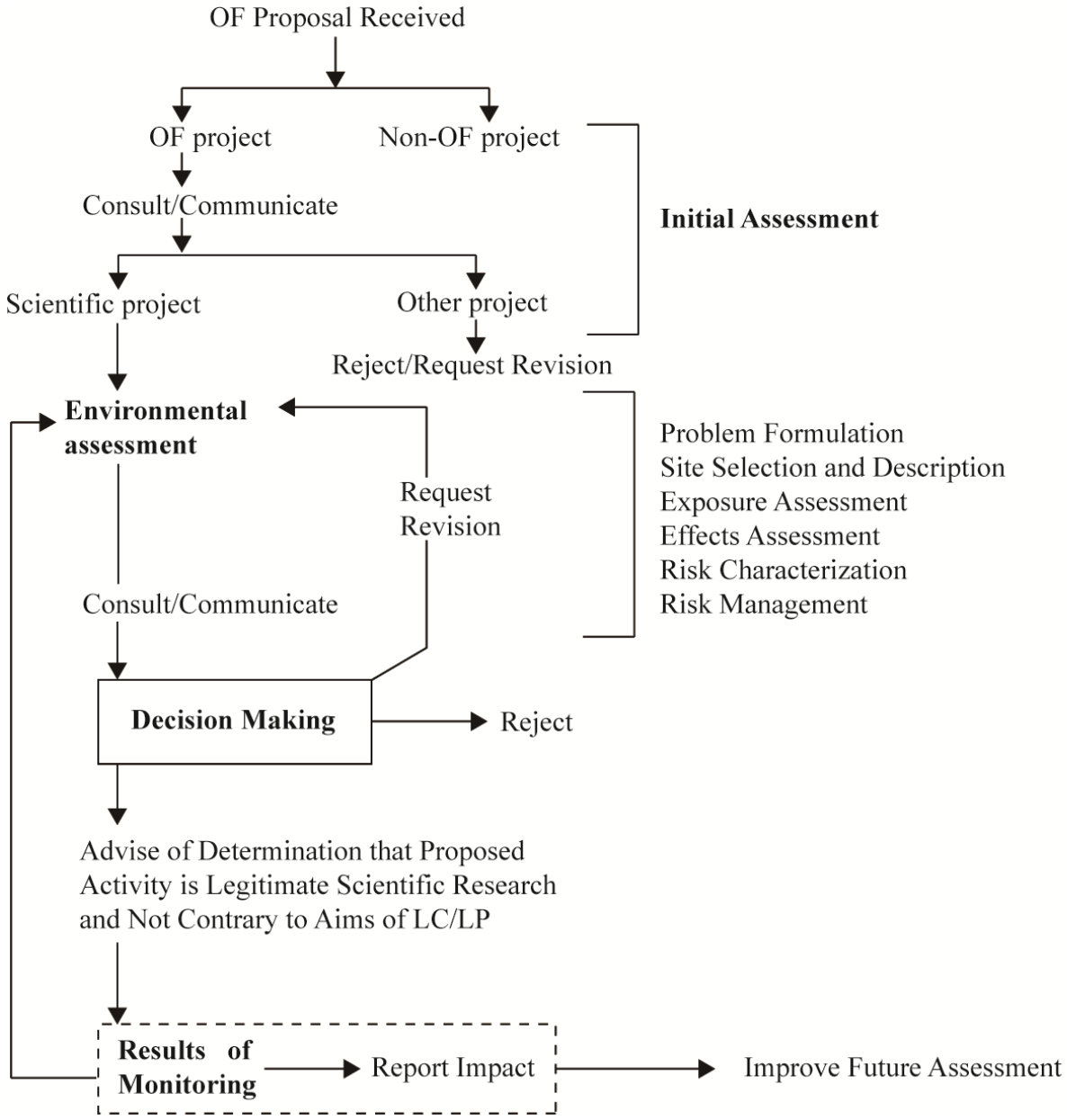

(a)
In-patch
Outside-patch
POC flux (mg C m-2 d-1)
1500
1000
500
0
-500
0
5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
Days after iron addtion
(b)
234Th (dpm l-1)
2.5
2.0
1.5
1.0
0.5
0
In-patch
Outside-patch
238U
0
5
10
15
Days after iron addtion

Fig. 9


OF Proposal Received
OF project
Non-OF project
Consult/Communicate
Initial Assessment
Scientific project
Other project
Reject/Request Revision
Environmental assessment
Problem Formulation
Site Selection and Description
Exposure Assessment
Effects Assessment
Risk Characterization
Risk Management
Request Revision
Consult/Communicate
Decision Making
Reject
Advise of Determination that Proposed Activity is Legitimate Scientific Research and Not Contrary to Aims of LC/LP
Results of Monitoring
Report Impact
Improve Future Assessment

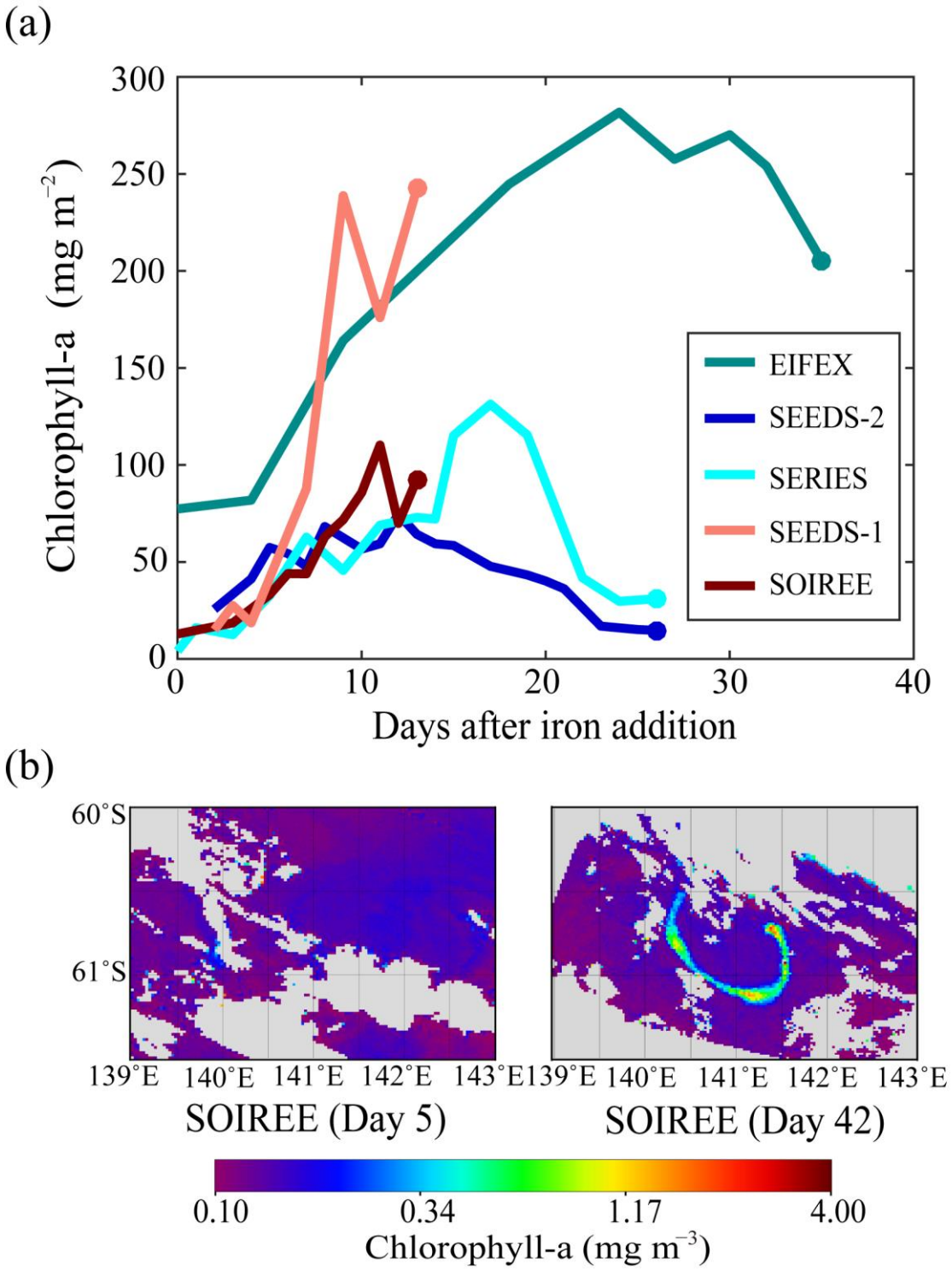
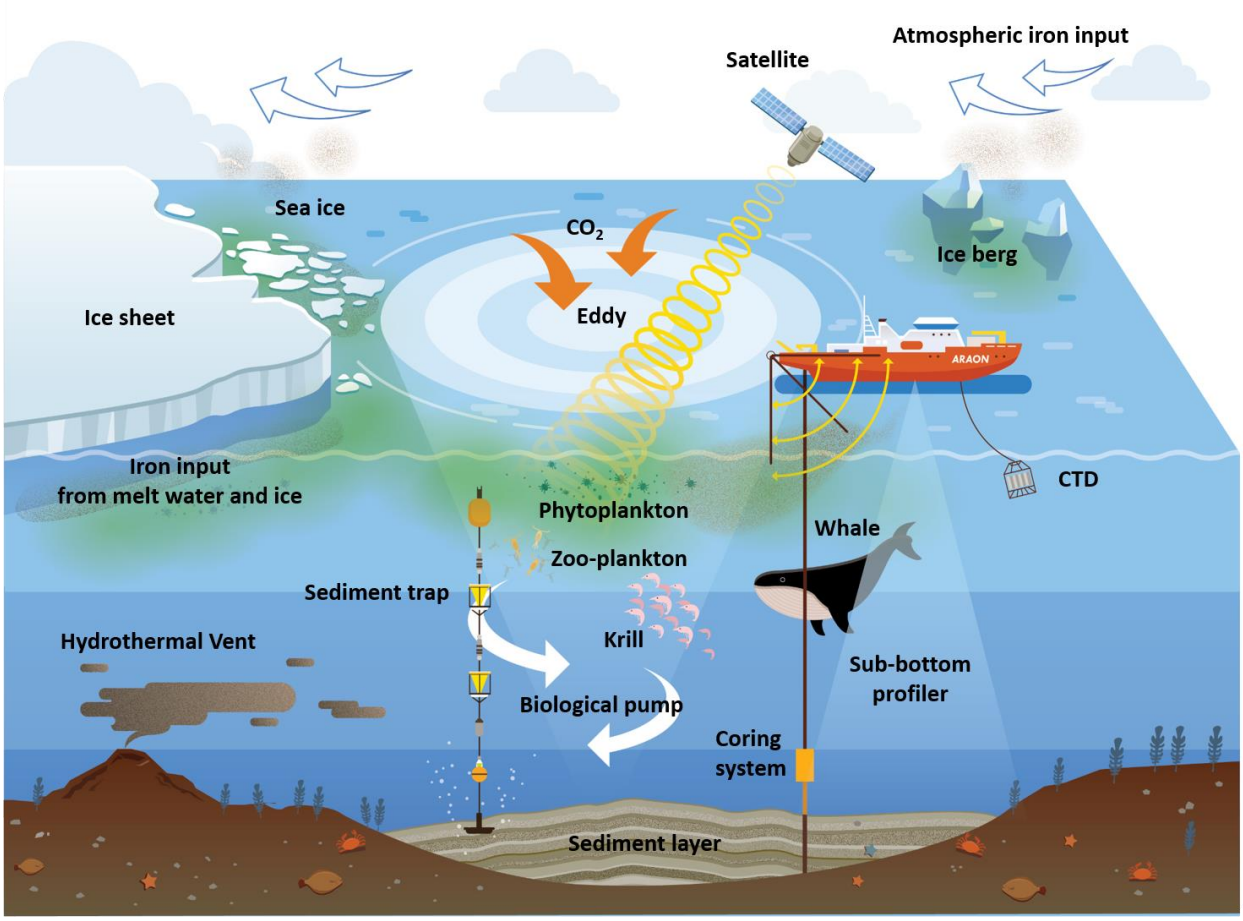

(a)
Chlorophyll-a (mg m^{-2})
300
250
200
150
100
50
0
0
10
20
30
40
Days after iron addition
EIFEX
SEEDS-2
SERIES
SEEDS-1
SOIREE
(b)
60°S
61°S
139°E 140°E 141°E 142°E 143°E
139°E 140°E 141°E 142°E 143°E
SOIREE (Day 5)
SOIREE (Day 42)
0.10
0.34
1.17
4.00
Chlorophyll-a (mg m^{-3})

Fig. 11


Atmospheric iron input
Satellite
Sea ice
CO_2
Ice berg
Ice sheet
Eddy
ARAON
CTD
Iron input
from melt water and ice
Phytoplankton
Zoo-plankton
Whale
Sediment trap
Hydrothermal Vent
Krill
Sub-bottom
profiler
Biological pump
Coring
system
Sediment layer